

# **HDL Compiler™ for Verilog User Guide**

---

Version O-2018.06, June 2018

**SYNOPSYS®**

# Copyright Notice and Proprietary Information

©2018 Synopsys, Inc. All rights reserved. This Synopsys software and all associated documentation are proprietary to Synopsys, Inc. and may only be used pursuant to the terms and conditions of a written license agreement with Synopsys, Inc. All other use, reproduction, modification, or distribution of the Synopsys software or the associated documentation is strictly prohibited.

## Destination Control Statement

All technical data contained in this publication is subject to the export control laws of the United States of America. Disclosure to nationals of other countries contrary to United States law is prohibited. It is the reader's responsibility to determine the applicable regulations and to comply with them.

## Disclaimer

SYNOPSYS, INC., AND ITS LICENSORS MAKE NO WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WITH REGARD TO THIS MATERIAL, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

## Trademarks

Synopsys and certain Synopsys product names are trademarks of Synopsys, as set forth at <http://www.synopsys.com/Company/Pages/Trademarks.aspx>.

All other product or company names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

## Free and Open-Source Software Licensing Notices

If applicable, Free and Open-Source Software (FOSS) licensing notices are available in the product installation.

## Third-Party Links

Any links to third-party websites included in this document are for your convenience only. Synopsys does not endorse and is not responsible for such websites and their practices, including privacy practices, availability, and content.

Synopsys, Inc.  
690 E. Middlefield Road  
Mountain View, CA 94043  
[www.synopsys.com](http://www.synopsys.com)

## Copyright Notice for the Command-Line Editing Feature

© 1992, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved. This code is derived from software contributed to Berkeley by Christos Zoulas of Cornell University.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- 1.Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- 2.Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- 3.All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement:

This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.

- 4.Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

## Copyright Notice for the Line-Editing Library

© 1992 Simmule Turner and Rich Salz. All rights reserved.

This software is not subject to any license of the American Telephone and Telegraph Company or of the Regents of the University of California.

Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose on any computer system, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions:

- 1.The authors are not responsible for the consequences of use of this software, no matter how awful, even if they arise from flaws in it.
- 2.The origin of this software must not be misrepresented, either by explicit claim or by omission. Since few users ever read sources, credits must appear in the documentation.
- 3.Altered versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be misrepresented as being the original software. Since few users ever read sources, credits must appear in the documentation.
- 4.This notice may not be removed or altered.



# Contents

---

About This Manual .....	2
Customer Support.....	5
<b>1. Introduction to HDL Compiler for Verilog</b>	
Reading Verilog Designs .....	1-3
Automated Process of Reading Designs With Dependencies .....	1-3
The -autoread Option .....	1-4
File Dependencies .....	1-5
Setting Library Search Order.....	1-6
File Format Inference Based on File Extensions.....	1-7
Reporting HDL Compiler Variables.....	1-8
Customizing Elaboration Reports.....	1-8
Reporting Elaboration Errors .....	1-9
Methodology .....	1-11
Examples.....	1-11
Querying Information about RTL Preprocessing.....	1-16
Netlist Reader.....	1-18
Automatic Detection of Input Type .....	1-18
Reading In Designs .....	1-19
Defining Macros .....	1-19
Using analyze -define .....	1-19
Predefined Macros .....	1-20

Global Macro Reset: `undefineall . . . . .	1-20
Parameterized Designs . . . . .	1-21
Reading Large Designs . . . . .	1-23
Use of \$display During RTL Elaboration . . . . .	1-23
Inputs and Outputs . . . . .	1-24
Input Descriptions . . . . .	1-25
Design Hierarchy . . . . .	1-26
Component Inference and Instantiation . . . . .	1-27
Naming Considerations . . . . .	1-27
Generic Netlists . . . . .	1-28
Inference Reports . . . . .	1-31
Error Messages . . . . .	1-31
Language Construct Support . . . . .	1-31
Licenses . . . . .	1-32
 <b>2. Coding Considerations</b>	
Coding for QoR . . . . .	2-2
Creating Relative Placement Using HDL Compiler Directives . . . . .	2-2
HDL Compiler Directives for Relative Placement . . . . .	2-3
Relative Placement Restrictions . . . . .	2-3
Specifying Relative Placement Groups . . . . .	2-4
Specifying Subgroups, Keepouts, and Instances . . . . .	2-5
Enabling Automatic Cell Placement . . . . .	2-6
Specifying Placement for Array Elements . . . . .	2-7
Specifying Cell Alignment . . . . .	2-8
Specifying Cell Orientation . . . . .	2-8
Ignoring Relative Placement . . . . .	2-9
Relative Placement Examples . . . . .	2-10
Relative Placement Example 1 . . . . .	2-10
Relative Placement Example 2 . . . . .	2-11
Relative Placement Example 3 . . . . .	2-13
Relative Placement Example 4 . . . . .	2-15
General Verilog Coding Guidelines . . . . .	2-16
Guidelines for Interacting With Other Flows . . . . .	2-18

Synthesis Flows . . . . .	2-18
Low-Power Flows . . . . .	2-18
Verification Flows . . . . .	2-21
<b>3. Modeling Combinational Logic</b>	
Synthetic Operators . . . . .	3-2
Logic and Arithmetic Expressions . . . . .	3-4
Basic Operators . . . . .	3-4
Carry-Bit Overflow . . . . .	3-5
Divide Operators . . . . .	3-6
Sign Conversions . . . . .	3-7
Multiplexing Logic . . . . .	3-12
SELECT_OP Inference . . . . .	3-12
One-Hot Multiplexer Inference . . . . .	3-14
MUX_OP Inference . . . . .	3-15
Variables That Control MUX_OP Inference . . . . .	3-17
MUX_OP Inference Examples . . . . .	3-18
Considerations When Using if Statements to Code For MUX_OPs . . . . .	3-23
MUX_OP Inference Limitations . . . . .	3-26
MUX_OP Components With Variable Indexing . . . . .	3-26
Modeling Complex MUX Inferences: Bit and Memory Accesses . . . . .	3-27
Bit-Truncation Coding for DC Ultra Datapath Extraction . . . . .	3-27
Latches in Combinational Logic . . . . .	3-31
<b>4. Modeling Sequential Logic</b>	
Generic Sequential Cells (SEQGENs) . . . . .	4-2
Inference Reports for Registers . . . . .	4-4
Register Inference Guidelines . . . . .	4-6
Multiple Events in an always Block . . . . .	4-6
Minimizing Registers . . . . .	4-7
Keeping Unloaded Registers . . . . .	4-8
Preventing Unwanted Latches: <code>hdlin_check_no_latch</code> . . . . .	4-11
Register Inference Limitations . . . . .	4-12

Register Inference Examples .....	4-13
Inferring Latches .....	4-13
Basic D Latch .....	4-14
D Latch With Asynchronous Set: Use <code>async_set_reset</code> .....	4-14
D Latch With Asynchronous Reset: Use <code>async_set_reset</code> .....	4-15
D Latch With Asynchronous Set and Reset: Use <code>hdlin_latch_always_async_set_reset</code> .....	4-15
Inferring Flip-Flops .....	4-16
Basic D Flip-Flop .....	4-18
D Flip-Flop With Asynchronous Reset Using <code>?: Construct</code> .....	4-18
D Flip-Flop With Asynchronous Reset .....	4-19
D Flip-Flop With Asynchronous Set and Reset .....	4-19
D Flip-Flop With Synchronous Set: Use <code>sync_set_reset</code> .....	4-20
D Flip-Flop With Synchronous Reset: Use <code>sync_set_reset</code> .....	4-21
D Flip-Flop With Synchronous and Asynchronous Load .....	4-22
D Flip-Flops With Complex Set/Reset Signals .....	4-23
Multiple Flip-Flops With Asynchronous and Synchronous Controls .....	4-24
JK Flip-Flop With Synchronous Set and Reset Using <code>sync_set_reset</code> .....	4-25
 <b>5. Modeling Finite State Machines</b>	
FSM Coding Requirements for Automatic Inference .....	5-2
FSM Inference Variables .....	5-3
FSM Coding Example .....	5-3
FSM Inference Report .....	5-6
Enumerated Types .....	5-7
 <b>6. Modeling Three-State Buffers</b>	
Using <code>z</code> Values .....	6-2
Three-State Driver Inference Report .....	6-2
Assigning a Single Three-State Driver to a Single Variable .....	6-3
Assigning Multiple Three-State Drivers to a Single Variable .....	6-4
Registering Three-State Driver Data .....	6-5
Instantiating Three-State Drivers .....	6-6



Errors and Warnings . . . . .	6-7
<b>7. HDL Compiler Synthesis Directives</b>	
async_set_reset . . . . .	7-3
async_set_reset_local . . . . .	7-3
async_set_reset_local_all . . . . .	7-3
dc_tcl_script_begin and dc_tcl_script_end . . . . .	7-4
enum . . . . .	7-5
full_case . . . . .	7-7
infer_multibit and dont_infer_multibit . . . . .	7-9
Using the infer_multibit Directive . . . . .	7-10
Using the dont_infer_multibit Directive . . . . .	7-11
Reporting Multibit Components . . . . .	7-12
infer_mux . . . . .	7-14
infer_mux_override . . . . .	7-14
infer_onehot_mux . . . . .	7-15
keep_signal_name . . . . .	7-15
one_cold . . . . .	7-15
one_hot . . . . .	7-15
parallel_case . . . . .	7-16
preserve_sequential . . . . .	7-17
sync_set_reset . . . . .	7-17
sync_set_reset_local . . . . .	7-18
sync_set_reset_local_all . . . . .	7-19
template . . . . .	7-19
translate_off and translate_on (Deprecated) . . . . .	7-20
Directive Support by Pragma Prefix . . . . .	7-20
<b>Appendix A. Verilog Design Examples</b>	
Coding for Late-Arriving Signals . . . . .	A-2

Duplicating Datapaths . . . . .	A-2
Moving Late-Arriving Signals Close to Output . . . . .	A-4
Overview . . . . .	A-5
Late-Arriving Data Signal Example 1 . . . . .	A-6
Late-Arriving Data Signal Example 2 . . . . .	A-7
Late-Arriving Data Signal Example 3 . . . . .	A-9
Late-Arriving Control Signal Example 1 . . . . .	A-12
Late-Arriving Control Signal Example 2 . . . . .	A-14
Master-Slave Latch Inferences . . . . .	A-15
Overview for Inferring Master-Slave Latches . . . . .	A-16
Master-Slave Latch With One Master-Slave Clock Pair . . . . .	A-16
Master-Slave Latch With Multiple Master-Slave Clock Pairs . . . . .	A-17
Master-Slave Latch With Discrete Components . . . . .	A-18

## Appendix B. Verilog Language Support

Syntax . . . . .	B-2
Comments . . . . .	B-2
Numbers . . . . .	B-2
Verilog Keywords . . . . .	B-3
Unsupported Verilog Language Constructs . . . . .	B-4
Construct Restrictions and Comments . . . . .	B-5
always Blocks . . . . .	B-6
generate Statements . . . . .	B-6
Generate Overview . . . . .	B-7
Types of generate Blocks . . . . .	B-7
Anonymous generate Blocks . . . . .	B-7
Loop Generate Blocks and Conditional Generate Blocks . . . . .	B-10
Restrictions . . . . .	B-11
Conditional Expressions (?:) Resource Sharing . . . . .	B-11
Case . . . . .	B-12
casez and casex . . . . .	B-12
Full Case and Parallel Case . . . . .	B-12
defparam . . . . .	B-14
disable . . . . .	B-14
Blocking and Nonblocking Assignments . . . . .	B-15
Macromodule . . . . .	B-16

inout Port Declaration .....	B-16
tri Data Type .....	B-17
HDL Compiler Directives .....	B-17
`define. ....	B-17
`include .....	B-18
`ifdef, `else, `endif, `ifndef, and `elsif .....	B-19
`rp_group and `rp_endgroup. ....	B-20
`rp_place. ....	B-20
`rp_fill .....	B-21
`rp_array_dir. ....	B-21
rp_align. ....	B-22
rp_orient .....	B-22
rp_ignore and rp_endignore .....	B-23
`undef .....	B-23
reg Types .....	B-23
Types in Busing .....	B-23
Combinational while Loops .....	B-24
Verilog 2001 and 2005 Supported Constructs .....	B-28
Ignored Constructs .....	B-29
Simulation Directives .....	B-29
Verilog System Functions .....	B-30
Verilog 2001 Feature Examples .....	B-30
Multidimensional Arrays and Arrays of Nets .....	B-30
Signed Quantities .....	B-32
Comparisons With Signed Types. ....	B-34
Controlling Signs With Casting Operators .....	B-35
Part-Select Addressing Operators ([+:] and [-:]). ....	B-35
Variable Part-Select Overview .....	B-35
Example—Ascending Array and -: .....	B-36
Example—Ascending Array and +: .....	B-37
Example—Descending Array and the -: Operator .....	B-38
Example—Descending Array and the +: Operator .....	B-39
Power Operator (**). ....	B-40
Arithmetic Shift Operators (<<< and >>>) .....	B-40
Verilog 2005 Feature Example .....	B-41
Zero Replication. ....	B-41
Configurations. ....	B-42

Configuration Examples . . . . .	B-43
Default Statement . . . . .	B-43
Instance Bindings . . . . .	B-45
Multiple Top-Level Designs . . . . .	B-46

## **Glossary**

# Preface

---

This preface includes the following sections:

- [About This Manual](#)
- [Customer Support](#)

---

## About This Manual

The HDL Compiler tool translates a Verilog hardware language description into a generic technology (GTECH) netlist that is used by the Design Compiler® tool to create an optimized netlist. This manual describes the following:

- Modeling combinational logic, synchronous logic, three-state buffers, and multibit cells with the HDL Compiler tool for Verilog
- Sharing resources
- Using directives in the RTL

---

## Audience

The *HDL Compiler for Verilog User Guide* is written for logic designers and electronic engineers who are familiar with the Design Compiler tool. Knowledge of the Verilog language is required, and knowledge of a high-level programming language is helpful.

---

## Related Publications

For additional information about the HDL Compiler tool, see the documentation on the Synopsys SolvNet® online support site at the following address:

<https://solvnet.synopsys.com/DocsOnWeb>

You might also want to see the documentation for the following related Synopsys products:

- DC Explorer
- Design Vision™
- Design Compiler®
- DesignWare® components
- Library Compiler™
- Verilog Compiled Simulator® (VCS)

---

## Release Notes

Information about new features, enhancements, changes, known limitations, and resolved Synopsys Technical Action Requests (STARs) is available in the *HDL Compiler Release Notes* on the SolvNet site.

To see the *HDL Compiler Release Notes*,

1. Go to the SolvNet Download Center located at the following address:  
<https://solvnet.synopsys.com/DownloadCenter>
2. Select HDL Compiler, and then select a release in the list that appears.

---

## Conventions

The following conventions are used in Synopsys documentation.

Convention	Description
Courier	Indicates syntax, such as <code>write_file</code> .
<i>Courier italic</i>	Indicates a user-defined value in syntax, such as <code>write_file design_list</code> .
<b>Courier bold</b>	Indicates user input—text you type verbatim—in examples, such as <code>prompt&gt; write_file top</code>
[ ]	Denotes optional arguments in syntax, such as <code>write_file [-format fmt]</code>
...	Indicates that arguments can be repeated as many times as needed, such as <code>pin1 pin2 ... pinN</code>
	Indicates a choice among alternatives, such as <code>low   medium   high</code>
Ctrl+C	Indicates a keyboard combination, such as holding down the Ctrl key and pressing C.
\	Indicates a continuation of a command line.
/	Indicates levels of directory structure.
Edit > Copy	Indicates a path to a menu command, such as opening the Edit menu and choosing Copy.

---



---

## Customer Support

Customer support is available through SolvNet online customer support and through contacting the Synopsys Technical Support Center.

---

### Accessing SolvNet

The SolvNet site includes a knowledge base of technical articles and answers to frequently asked questions about Synopsys tools. The SolvNet site also gives you access to a wide range of Synopsys online services including software downloads, documentation, and technical support.

To access the SolvNet site, go to the following address:

<https://solvnet.synopsys.com>

If prompted, enter your user name and password. If you do not have a Synopsys user name and password, follow the instructions to sign up for an account.

If you need help using the SolvNet site, click HELP in the top-right menu bar.

---

### Contacting the Synopsys Technical Support Center

If you have problems, questions, or suggestions, you can contact the Synopsys Technical Support Center in the following ways:

- Open a support case to your local support center online by signing in to the SolvNet site at <https://solvnet.synopsys.com>, clicking Support, and then clicking “Open A Support Case.”
- Send an e-mail message to your local support center.
  - E-mail [support\\_center@synopsys.com](mailto:support_center@synopsys.com) from within North America.
  - Find other local support center e-mail addresses at <https://www.synopsys.com/support/global-support-centers.html>
- Telephone your local support center.
  - Call (800) 245-8005 from within North America.
  - Find other local support center telephone numbers at <https://www.synopsys.com/support/global-support-centers.html>



# 1

## Introduction to HDL Compiler for Verilog

---

The Synopsys Design Compiler tool uses the HDL Compiler tool to read designs written in the Verilog hardware description language.

Note:

This manual uses the default tool command language (Tcl) standard for most examples and discussion.

This chapter introduces the main concepts and capabilities of HDL Compiler. It includes the following sections:

- [Reading Verilog Designs](#)
- [Reporting HDL Compiler Variables](#)
- [Customizing Elaboration Reports](#)
- [Reporting Elaboration Errors](#)
- [Querying Information about RTL Preprocessing](#)
- [Netlist Reader](#)
- [Automatic Detection of Input Type](#)
- [Reading In Designs](#)
- [Defining Macros](#)
- [Parameterized Designs](#)

- [Reading Large Designs](#)
- [Use of \\$display During RTL Elaboration](#)
- [Inputs and Outputs](#)
- [Language Construct Support](#)
- [Licenses](#)

---

## Reading Verilog Designs

When the HDL Compiler tool reads a design, it checks for correct syntax and builds a generic technology (GTECH) netlist that the Design Compiler tool uses to optimize the design. You can use the `read_verilog` command to do both functions or use the `analyze` and `elaborate` commands to do each function separately. If you have parameterized designs, use the `elaborate` command to specify parameter values.

The tool supports automatic linking of mixed-language libraries. In Verilog, the default library is in the work directory, and you cannot have multiple libraries. In VHDL, you can have multiple design libraries.

### Specifying the Verilog Version

To specify which Verilog language version to use during the read process, set the `hdlin_vrlg_std` variable. The valid values for the `hdlin_vrlg_std` variable are 1995, 2001, and 2005, corresponding to the 1995, 2001, and 2005 Verilog LRM releases respectively. The default is 2005.

In addition to RTL designs, the tool can read Verilog gate-level netlists.

### See Also

- [Parameterized Designs](#)
- [Automatic Detection of Input Type](#)

---

## Automated Process of Reading Designs With Dependencies

You can enable the tool to automatically read designs with dependencies in the correct order by using the `-autoread` option with the `read_file` or the `analyze` command.

- `read_file -autoread`

This command reads files with dependencies automatically, analyzes the files, and elaborates the files starting at a specified top-level design. For example,

```
dc_shell> read_file -autoread file_list -top design_name
```

You must specify the `file_list` argument to list the files, directories, or both to be analyzed. The `-autoread` option locates the source files by expanding each file or directory in the `file_list` argument. You must specify the top design by using the `-top` option.

- `analyze -autoread`

This command reads files with dependencies automatically and analyzes the files without elaboration. For example,

```
dc_shell> analyze -autoread file_list -top design_name
```

You must specify the `file_list` argument to list the files, directories, or both to be analyzed. The `-autoread` option locates the source files by expanding each file or directory in the `file_list` argument. If you use the `-top` option, the tool analyzes only the source files needed to elaborate the top-level design. If you do not specify the `-top` option, the tool analyzes all the files in the `file_list` argument, grouping them in the order according to the dependencies that the `-autoread` option infers.

## Example

The following example specifies the current directory as the source directory. The command reads the source files, analyzes them, and then elaborates the design starting at the top-level design.

```
dc_shell> read_file {.} -autoread -recursive -top E1
```

The following example specifies the file extensions for Verilog files other than the default (.v) and sets the file source lists. The `read_file -autoread` command specifies the top-level design and includes only files with the specified Verilog file extensions.

```
dc_shell> set_app_var hdlin_autoread_sverilog_extensions {.ve .VE}
dc_shell> set_app_var my_sources {mod1/src mod2/src}
dc_shell> set_app_var my_excludes {mod1/src/incl_dir/ mod2/src/incl_dir/}
dc_shell> read_file $my_sources -recursive -exclude $my_excludes \
    -autoread -format verilog -top TOP
```

Excluding directories is useful when you do not want the tool to use those files that have the same file extensions as the source files in the directories.

## See Also

- [The -autoread Option](#)
- [File Dependencies](#)

## The -autoread Option

When you use the `-autoread file_list` option with the `read_file` or `analyze` command, the resulting GTECH representation is retained in memory. Dependencies are determined by the files or directories specified in the `file_list` argument. If the `file_list` argument changes between consecutive calls of the `-autoread` option, the tool uses the latest set of files to determine the dependencies. You can use the `-autoread` option on designs written in any VHDL, Verilog, or SystemVerilog language version. If you do not specify this option, only the files specified in the `file_list` argument are processed and the file list cannot include directories.

When you specify a directory as an argument, the command reads files from the directory. If you specify both the `-autoread` and `-recursive` options, the command also reads files in the subdirectories.

When the `-autoread` option is set, the command infers RTL source files based on the file extensions set by the variables listed in the following table. If you specify the `-format` option, only files with the specified file extensions are read.

Variable	Description	Default
<code>hdlin_autoread_exclude_extensions</code>	Specifies the file extension to exclude files from the analyze process.	" "
<code>hdlin_autoread_verilog_extensions</code>	Specifies the file extension to analyze files as Verilog files.	.v
<code>hdlin_auto_autoread_vhdl_extensions</code>	Specifies the file extension to analyze files as VHDL files.	.vhd .vhdl
<code>hdlin_autoread_sverilog_extensions</code>	Specifies the file extension to analyze files as SystemVerilog files.	.sv .sverilog

## File Dependencies

A file dependency occurs when a file requires language constructs that are defined in another file. When you specify the `-autoread` command, the tool automatically analyzes the files (and elaborates the files if you use the `read_file` command) with the following dependencies in the correct order:

- *Analyze dependency*  
If file B defines entity E in SystemVerilog and file A defines the architecture of entity E, file A depends on file B and must be analyzed after file B. Language constructs that can cause analyze dependencies include VHDL package declarations, entity declarations, direct instantiations, and SystemVerilog package definitions and import.
- *Link dependency*  
If module X instantiates module Y in Verilog, you must analyze both of them before elaboration and linking to prevent the tool from inferring a black box for the missing module. Language constructs that can cause link dependencies include VHDL component instantiations and SystemVerilog interface instantiations.
- *Include dependency*  
When file X includes file Y using the ``include` directive, this is known as an *include dependency*. The `-autoread` option analyzes the file where the ``include` directive is

when any of the included files are changed between consecutive calls of the `-autoread` option.

- *Verilog and SystemVerilog compilation-unit dependency*

The dependency occurs when the tool detects files that must be analyzed together in one compilation unit. For example, Verilog or SystemVerilog macro usage and definition are located in different files but not linked by the ``include` directive, such as a macro defined several times in different files. The `-autoread` option cannot determine which file to use. Language constructs that can cause compilation-unit dependencies include SystemVerilog function types, local parameters, and enumerated values defined by the `$unit` scope.

---

## Setting Library Search Order

When multiple design libraries are available during elaboration, the HDL Compiler tool searches for a particular design in the libraries that are defined by the `define_design_lib` command. The library defined last is searched first. This is the default library search order. It applies to the entire design, including the subdesigns. By default, the tool searches the library of the parent design first for a subdesign. If the subdesign is not found, it searches other libraries in this search order.

For example, the library search order is defined as `lib3`, `lib2`, and `lib1` in the following `define_design_lib` command sequence:

```
dc_shell> define_design_lib lib1 ...
dc_shell> define_design_lib lib2 ...
dc_shell> define_design_lib lib3 ...
```

To change the library search order, list the libraries by using the `-uses` option with the `analyze` command. When a design is analyzed with the `analyze -uses design_libs` command, the tool searches for the subdesigns of this design in the library order specified by the `-uses` option.

When you use the `-uses` option,

- The parent design library is searched first, followed by libraries in the order specified by the `-uses` option.
- The specified library search order applies only to the specified design and its subdesigns. Other designs use the default.
- The search is restricted to the libraries specified by the `-uses` option. Other libraries are not searched even if no library is found in the specified libraries.
- An empty list for the `-uses` option limits the search to the library of the parent design.



For example, in the following design, three different versions of the submod design are analyzed in the lib1, lib2, and lib3 libraries respectively:

top.v

```
module top (...);
...
U0 submod (...);
...
endmodule
```

submod1.v

```
submod (...);
<implementation 1>
endmodule
```

submod2.v

```
submod (...);
<implementation 2>
endmodule
```

submod3.v

```
submod (...);
<implementation 3>
endmodule
```

When you use the following command to analyze the top-level top.v design, the module analyzed using the lib2 library is chosen during elaboration and the modules using the lib1 and lib3 libraries are ignored.

```
dc_shell> analyze ... -uses "lib2 lib1 lib3" top.v
```

---

## File Format Inference Based on File Extensions

You can specify a file format by using the `-format` option with the `read_file` command. If you do not specify a format, the `read_file` command infers the format based on the file extensions. If the file extension is unknown, the tool assumes the `.ddc` format. The file extensions in [Table](#) are supported for automatic inference:

Format	File extensions
ddc	.ddc
db	.db, .sldb, .sdb, .db.gz, .sldb.gz, .sdb.gz
SystemVerilog	.sv, .sverilog, .sv.gz, .sverilog.gz

---

The supported extensions are not case-sensitive. All formats except the .ddc format can be compressed in gzip (.gz) format.

If you use a file extension that is not supported and you omit the `-format` option, the synthesis tool generates an error message. For example, if you specify `read_file test.vlog`, the tool issues the following DDC-2 error message:

```
Error: Unable to open file 'test.vlog' for reading. (DDC-2)
```

---

## Reporting HDL Compiler Variables

To get a list of variables that affect RTL reading, use the `printvar` command with the `hdlin*` argument.

All HDL Compiler variables are prefixed with `hdlin`. Running the following command gives you a list of HDL Compiler variables and their defaults:

```
dc_shell> printvar hdlin*
```

Other variables that affect RTL reading include the ones prefixed with `template` and `bus*style`. Use the following commands to report these variables:

```
dc_shell> printvar template*
dc_shell> printvar bus*style
```

For more information about a specific variable, see the man page. For example,

```
dc_shell> man hdlin_analyze_verbose_mode
```

---

## Customizing Elaboration Reports

By default, the tool displays inferred sequential elements, MUX\_OPs, and inferred three-state elements in the elaboration reports using the `basic` setting, as shown in [Table 1-1](#). You can choose to customize the report by setting the `hdlin_reporting_level` variable to `none`, `comprehensive`, or `verbose`. A `true`, `false`, or `verbose` indicates that the corresponding information is included, excluded, or detailed respectively in the elaboration report.

*Table 1-1 Basic hdlin\_reporting\_level Variable Settings*

Information displayed (information keyword)	<b>basic</b> (default)	<b>none</b>	<b>comprehensive</b>	<b>verbose</b>
Floating net to ground connections (floating_net_to_ground)	false	false	true	true

*Table 1-1 Basic hdlin\_reporting\_level Variable Settings (Continued)*

Information displayed (information keyword)	basic (default)	none	comprehensive	verbose
Inferred state variables (fsm)	false	false	true	true
Inferred sequential elements (inferred_modules)	true	false	true	verbose
MUX_OPs (mux_op)	true	false	true	true
Synthetic cells (syn_cell)	false	false	true	true
Inferred three-state elements (tri_state)	true	false	true	true

In addition to the four settings, you can customize the report by specifying the add (+) or subtract (-) option. For example, to report floating-net-to-ground connections, synthetic cells, inferred state variables, and verbose information for inferred sequential elements, but not MUX\_OPs or inferred three-state elements, enter

```
dc_shell> set_app_var hdlin_reporting_level verbose-mux_op-tri_state
```

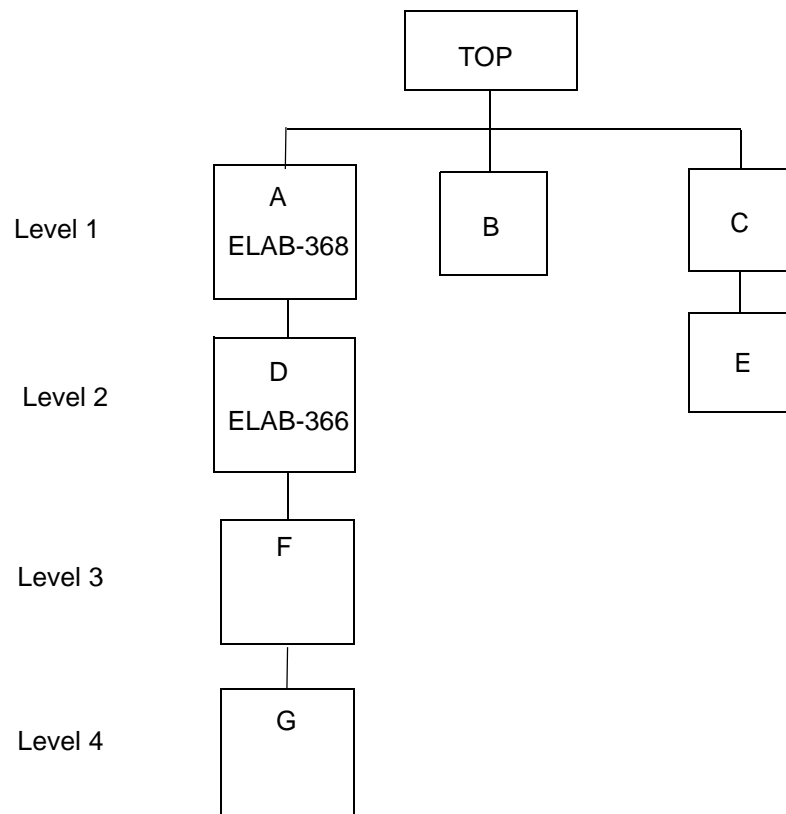
Setting the `hdlin_reporting_level` variable as follows is equivalent to the `set_app_var hdlin_reporting_level comprehensive` command, which reports comprehensive information.

```
dc_shell> set_app_var hdlin_reporting_level \
    basic+floating_net_to_ground+syn_cell+fsm
```

## Reporting Elaboration Errors

HDL Compiler elaborates designs in a top-down hierarchical order. The elaboration failure of a top-level module prohibits the elaboration of all associated submodules. The `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` variable allows the elaboration of submodules even if the top-level module elaboration fails, enabling HDL Compiler to report more elaboration, link, and VER-37 errors and warnings in a hierarchical design during the first elaboration run.

To understand how this variable works, consider the four-level hierarchical design in [Figure 1-1](#). This design has elaboration (ELAB) errors as noted in the figure.

*Figure 1-1 Hierarchical Design*

Under default conditions, when you elaborate the design, HDL Compiler only reports the errors in the first-level (ELAB-368 in module A). To find the second-level error (ELAB-366 in submodule D), you need to fix the first-level errors and elaborate again.

When you use the `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` variable, you only need to elaborate once to find the errors in A and the submodule D.

This section describes the `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` variable and provides methodology and examples:

- [Methodology](#)
- [Examples](#)

---

## Methodology

Use the following methodology to enable HDL Compiler to report elaboration, link, and VER-37 errors across the hierarchy during a single elaboration run.

1. Identify and fix all syntax errors in the design.
2. Set `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` to `true`.

When you set this variable to `true`, HDL Compiler reports the following:

```
*** HDLC compilation run in rtl debug mode. ***
```

Important:

HDL Compiler does not create designs when you set `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` to `true`. The tool reports warnings if you try to use commands that require a design. For example, if you run the `list_designs` command, the tool reports the message “Warning: No designs to list. (UID-275).”

3. Elaborate your design using the `elaborate` command.
4. Fix any elaboration, link, and VER-37 errors. Review the warnings and fix as needed.
5. Set `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` to `false`.
6. Elaborate your error-free design.
7. Proceed with your normal synthesis flow.

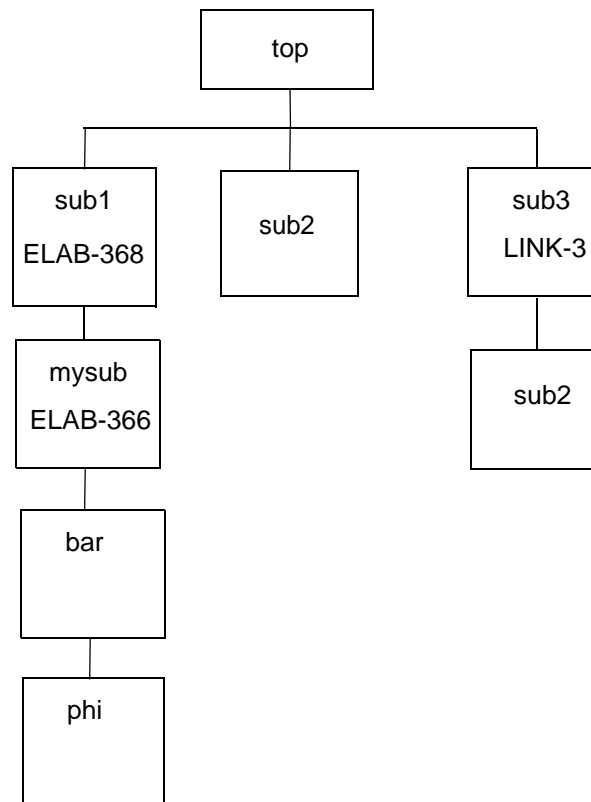
The next section provides examples showing HDL Compiler reporting all errors across the hierarchy, which reduces the need for multiple elaboration runs.

---

## Examples

To enable HDL Compiler to report errors down the hierarchy in one elaboration run, you can set the `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` variable to `true`, changing it from its default of `false`. This variable is designed to speed up the time in finding design elaboration and linking errors.

This section uses the top design in [Figure 1-2](#) as an example of reporting hierarchical errors. The error messages are shown in the figure. [Example 1-1](#) lists the RTL code of the top design.

*Figure 1-2 Hierarchical Design**Example 1-1 Verilog RTL for the top Design*

```

module top (clk, a, b, c, out, small_bus);
    parameter SMALL = 8;
    input clk, a, b;
    output c, out;
    output [SMALL-1:0] small_bus;

    sub1 sub1_inst (clk, a, b, c, out, small_bus);
    sub2 sub2_inst (a, b, c);
    sub3 sub3_inst (a, b, c);
endmodule

module sub1 (clk, a, b, c, out, small_bus);
    parameter SMALL = 8;
    input clk, a, b;
    output c, out;
    output [SMALL-1:0] small_bus;
    wire [1:0] r;
    wire temp;
  
```

```

    assign temp = c & out;
    assign temp = 1'b1;      // ELAB-368 error

    mysub mysub_inst (a, b, c, small_bus, clk);
endmodule

module mysub (a, b, c, small_bus, clk);
    parameter SMALL = 8;
    input a, b, clk;
    output c;
    output [SMALL-1:0] small_bus;
    wire [1:0] r;
    assign c = r[1];        // ELAB-366 error
    assign c = a & b;
    bar bar_inst (a, b, c, small_bus);
endmodule

module bar (a, b, c, small_bus);
    parameter SMALL = 8;
    input a, b;
    output [SMALL-1:0] small_bus;
    output c;
    phi #(SMALL) phi_ok(small_bus);
    assign c = ~b;
endmodule

module phi(addr_bus);
    parameter SIZE = 1024;
    output [SIZE-1:0] addr_bus;
    assign addr_bus = 'b1;
endmodule // phi
module sub2 (a, b, c);
    input a, b;
    output c;
    assign c = a ^ b;
endmodule

module sub3 (a, b, c);
    input [3:0] a;
    input [3:0] b;
    output [3:0] c;
    assign c = a | b;
    sub2 sub2(a[2], b[3], c[0]); //LINK-3 error for a, b, c
endmodule // sub3

```

When you elaborate the top design with the `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` variable set to `false`, HDL Compiler reports the first-level errors, the ELAB-368 error in the `sub1` module and the LINK-3 error in the `sub3` module, but it does not report the ELAB-366 error in the `mysub` submodule. [Example 1-2](#) shows the session log.

### Example 1-2 Session Log

```
dc_shell> set hdlin_elab_errors_deep false
```

```

false
dc_shell> analyze -f verilog rtl/test.v
Running PRESTO HDLC
Searching for ./rtl/test.v
Compiling source file ./rtl/test.v
Presto compilation completed successfully.
Loading db file '.../libraries/syn/lsi_10k.db'
1
dc_shell> elaborate top
Loading db file '.../libraries/syn/gtech.db'
Loading db file '.../libraries/syn/standard.sldb'
  Loading link library 'lsi_10k'
  Loading link library 'gtech'
Running PRESTO HDLC
Presto compilation completed successfully.
Elaborated 1 design.
Current design is now 'top'.
Information: Building the design 'sub1'. (HDL-193)
Error: ./rtl/test.v:18: Net 'temp', or a directly connected net, is
driven by more than one source, and at least one source is a constant
net. (ELAB-368)
*** Presto compilation terminated with 1 errors. ***
Information: Building the design 'sub2'. (HDL-193)
Presto compilation completed successfully.
Presto compilation completed successfully.
Error: Width mismatch on port 'a' of reference to 'sub3' in 'top'.
(LINK-3)
Error: Width mismatch on port 'b' of reference to 'sub3' in 'top'.
(LINK-3)
Error: Width mismatch on port 'c' of reference to 'sub3' in 'top'.
(LINK-3)
Warning: Design 'top' has '1' unresolved references. For more detailed
information, use the "link" command. (UID-341)
1
dc_shell> current_design
Current design is 'top'.
{top}
dc_shell> list_designs
sub2    sub3    top (*)
1

```

When you set the `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` variable to `true`, HDL Compiler reports errors down the hierarchy during elaboration. [Example 1-3](#) shows the session log with all the error messages.

### Example 1-3 Session Log With All the Error Messages

```

dc_shell> set hdlin_elab_errors_deep true
true
dc_shell> analyze -f verilog rtl/test.v
Running PRESTO HDLC
Searching for ./rtl/test.v
Compiling source file ./rtl/test.v

```



```

Presto compilation completed successfully.
Loading db file '.../libraries/syn/lsi_10k.db'
1
dc_shell> elaborate top
Loading db file '.../libraries/syn/gtech.db'
Loading db file '.../libraries/syn/standard.sldb'
  Loading link library 'lsi_10k'
  Loading link library 'gtech'
Running PRESTO HDLC
*** Presto compilation run in rtl debug mode. ***
Presto compilation completed successfully.
Elaborated 1 design.
Current design is now 'top'.
Information: Building the design 'sub1'. (HDL-193)
*** Presto compilation run in rtl debug mode. ***
Error: ./rtl/test.v:18: Net 'temp', or a directly connected net, is
driven by more than one source, and at least one source is a constant
net. (ELAB-368)
Presto compilation completed successfully.
Information: Building the design 'sub2'. (HDL-193)
*** Presto compilation run in rtl debug mode. ***
Presto compilation completed successfully.
Information: Building the design 'sub3'. (HDL-193)
*** Presto compilation run in rtl debug mode. ***
Presto compilation completed successfully.
Error: Width mismatch on port 'a' of reference to 'sub3' in 'top'.
(LINK-3)
Error: Width mismatch on port 'b' of reference to 'sub3' in 'top'.
(LINK-3)
Error: Width mismatch on port 'c' of reference to 'sub3' in 'top'.
(LINK-3)
Information: Building the design 'mysub'. (HDL-193)
*** Presto compilation run in rtl debug mode. ***
Error: ./rtl/test.v:29: Net 'c' or a directly connected net is driven by
more than one source, and not all drivers are three-state. (ELAB-366)
Presto compilation completed successfully.
Information: Building the design 'bar'. (HDL-193)
*** Presto compilation run in rtl debug mode. ***
Presto compilation completed successfully.
Information: Building the design 'phi' instantiated from design 'bar'
with the parameters "8". (HDL-193)
*** Presto compilation run in rtl debug mode. ***
Presto compilation completed successfully.
1
dc_shell> current_design
Error: Current design is not defined. (UID-4)
dc_shell> list_designs
Warning: No designs to list. (UID-275)
0

```

By default, only the top-level errors are reported:

- ELAB-368 in the sub1 module

- LINK-3 in the sub3 module

To find the child-level ELAB-366 error in the mysub submodule, you need to fix all the errors in the sub1 and sub3 modules and run the `elaborate` command again. However, when you set the `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` variable to `true`, HDL Compiler reports all errors down the hierarchy in one elaboration run:

- ELAB-368 in the sub1 module
- LINK-3 in the sub3 module
- ELAB-366 in the mysub submodule

When the `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` variable is set to `true`, note the following guidelines:

- No designs are saved because the designs could be erroneous.
- The `compile_ultra` and `list_designs` commands do not work.
- You should use the `analyze` command rather than the `read_file` command to read your design because the `read_file` command has no link functionality and accepts no command-line parameter specifications.
- All syntax errors are reported when you run the `analyze` command, but HDL Compiler is not a linting tool. You should use the `check_design` command in Design Compiler for linting.
- The runtime during elaboration might increase slightly.

Important:

HDL Compiler does not create designs when the `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` variable is set to `true`. If you run the `list_designs` command, HDL Compiler reports the following warning:

```
Warning: No designs to list. (UID-275)
```

---

## Querying Information about RTL Preprocessing

You can query information about preprocessing of the RTL, including macro definitions, macro expansions, and evaluations of the conditional statements. You use this information to debug design issues, especially for designs with a large number of macros. To query the preprocessing information, set the `hdlin_analyze_verbose_mode` variable to one of the values listed in [Table](#) for the type of information to be reported. The default is 0.

Variable setting	Information reported
0	No preprocessing information.

Variable setting	Information reported
1	Macro definitions (described by the <code>`define</code> directive in the RTL and specified by the <code>-define</code> option on the command line) and evaluations of the conditional statements.
2	Macro expansions and the information reported when the variable is set to 1.

The following example shows how to report preprocessing information by using the `hdlin_analyze_verbose_mode` variable:

- `example.v` file

```
`define MYMACRO 1'b0

module m (
    input in1,
    output out1
);

`ifdef MYRTL
    assign out1 = `MYMACRO;
`else
    assign out1 = in1;
`endif
endmodule
```

- Excerpt from the log file

```
dc_shell> set hdlin_analyze_verbose_mode 1
1
dc_shell> # Generates messages that `ifdef being skipped and `else
analyzed
dc_shell> analyze -f sverilog example.v
...
Information: ./example.v:6: Skipping `ifdef then clause because MYRTL
is not defined.(VER-7)
Information: ./example.v:8: Analyzing `else clause.(VER-7)
...
dc_shell> # Generates messages that `ifdef is analyzed and `else
skipped
dc_shell> analyze -f sverilog -define MYRTL example.v
...
Information: ./example.v:6: Analyzing `ifdef then clause because MYRTL
is defined.(VER-7)
Information: ./example.v:8: Skipping `else clause.(VER-7)
...
dc_shell> set hdlin_analyze_verbose_mode 2
2
dc_shell> # Generates additional messages about evaluation of macro
`MUMACRO to 1'b0
```

```
dc_shell> analyze -f sverilog -define MYRTL example.v
...
Information: ./example.v:6: Analyzing `ifdef then clause because MYRTL
is defined.(VER-7)
Information: ./example.v:7: Macro |`MYMACRO| expanded to |1'b0|.
(VER-7)
Information: ./example.v:8: Skipping `else clause.(VER-7)
...
```

---

## Netlist Reader

Design Compiler contains a specialized reader for gate-level Verilog netlists that has higher capacity on designs that do not use RTL-level constructs, but it does not support the entire Verilog language. The specialized netlist reader reads netlists faster and uses less memory than HDL Compiler.

If you have problems reading a netlist with the netlist reader, try reading it with HDL Compiler by using `read_verilog -rtl` or by specifying `read_file -format verilog -rtl`.

---

## Automatic Detection of Input Type

By default, when you read in a Verilog gate-level netlist, HDL Compiler determines that your design is a netlist and runs the specialized netlist reader.

Important:

For best memory usage and runtime, do not mix RTL and netlist designs into a single read. The automatic detector chooses one reader—netlist or RTL—to read all files included in the command. Mixed files default to the RTL reader, because it can read both types; the netlist reader can read only netlists.

The following variables apply only to HDL Compiler and are not implemented by the netlist reader:

- `power_preserve_rtl_hier_names` (default is `false`)
- `hdlin_auto_save_templates` (default is `false`)

If you set either of these variables to `true`, automatic netlist detection is disabled and you must use the `-netlist` option to enable the netlist reader.

---

## Reading In Designs

[Table](#) summarizes the recommended and alternative commands to read in your designs.

Type of input	Reading method
RTL	<p>For parameterized designs,</p> <pre>analyze -format verilog { files } elaborate topdesign</pre> <p>is preferred because it does a recursive elaboration of the entire design and lets you pass parameter values to the elaboration. The read method conditionally elaborates all designs with the default parameters.</p> <p>To enable macro definition from the read, use</p> <pre>read_file -format verilog { files }</pre> <p>Alternative reading methods:</p> <pre>read_verilog -rtl { files } read_file -format verilog -rtl { files }</pre>
Gate-level netlists	<p>Recommended reading method:</p> <pre>read_verilog { files }</pre> <p>Alternative reading methods:</p> <pre>read_verilog -netlist { files } read_file -format verilog -netlist { files }</pre>

---

## Defining Macros

HDL Compiler provides the following support for macro definition.

---

### Using analyze -define

You can use `analyze -define` to define macros on the command line; see [“define” on page B-17](#) for more information.

#### Note:

When using the `-define` option with multiple `analyze` commands, you must remove any designs in memory before analyzing the design again. To remove the designs, use the `remove_design -all` command. Because elaborated designs in memory have no timestamps, the tool cannot determine whether the analyzed file has been updated. The tool might assume that the previously elaborated design is up-to-date and reuse it.

---

## Predefined Macros

You can also use the following predefined macros:

- **SYNTHESIS**—Used to specify simulation-only code, as shown in [Example 1-4](#).

### Example 1-4 Using *SYNTHESIS* and *`ifndef ... `endif* Constructs

```
module dff_async (RESET, SET, DATA, Q, CLK);
    input CLK;
    input RESET, SET, DATA;
    output Q;
    reg Q;
    // synopsys one_hot "RESET, SET"

    always @(posedge CLK or posedge RESET or posedge SET)
        if (RESET)
            Q <= 1'b0;
        else if (SET)
            Q <= 1'b1;
        else Q <= DATA;
    `ifndef SYNTHESIS
        always @ (RESET or SET)
            if (RESET + SET > 1)
                $write ("ONE-HOT violation for RESET and SET.");
    `endif
endmodule
```

In this example, the **SYNTHESIS** macro and the *`ifndef ... `endif* constructs determine whether or not to execute the simulation-only code that checks if the **RESET** and **SET** signals are asserted at the same time. The main **always** block is both simulated and synthesized; the block wrapped in the *`ifndef ... `endif* construct is executed only during simulation.

- **VERILOG\_1995**, **VERILOG\_2001**, **VERILOG\_2005**—Used for conditional inclusion of Verilog 1995, Verilog 2001, or Verilog 2005 features respectively. When you set the **hdlin\_vrlg\_std** variable to 1995, 2001, or 2005, the corresponding macro **VERILOG\_1995**, **VERILOG\_2001**, or **VERILOG\_2005** is predefined. By default, the **hdlin\_vrlg\_std** variable is set to 2005.

---

## Global Macro Reset: *`undefineall*

The *`undefineall* directive is a global reset for all macros that causes all the macros defined earlier in the source file to be reset to undefined.

---

## Parameterized Designs

There are two ways to build parameterized designs. One method instantiates them, as shown in [Example 1-5](#).

### *Example 1-5 Instantiating a Parameterized Design*

```
module param (a,b,c);  
  
    input [3:0] a,b;  
    output [3:0] c;  
  
    test #(4,5,4+6) U1(a,b,c); // instantiate test  
  
endmodule
```

In [Example 1-5](#), the code instantiates the parameterized design test, which has three parameters. The first parameter is assigned the value 4, the second parameter is assigned the value 5, and the third parameter takes the value 10.

The second method builds a parameterized design with the `elaborate` command. The syntax of the command is

```
elaborate template_name -parameters parameter_list
```

The syntax of the parameter specifications includes strings, integers, and constants using the following formats ``b`, ``h`, `b`, and `h`.

You can store parameterized designs in user-specified design libraries. For example,

```
analyze -format verilog n-register.v -library mylib
```

This command stores the analyzed results of the design contained in file `n-register.v` in a user-specified design library, `mylib`.

To verify that a design is stored in memory, use the `report_design_lib work` command. The `report_design_lib` command lists designs that reside in the indicated design library.

When a design is built from a template, only the parameters you indicate when you instantiate the parameterized design are used in the template name. For example, suppose the template `ADD` has parameters `N`, `M`, and `Z`. You can build a design where `N = 8`, `M = 6`, and `Z` is left at its default. The name assigned to this design is `ADD_N8_M6`. If no parameters are listed, the template is built with the default, and the name of the created design is the same as the name of the template. If no default parameters are provided, an error occurs.

The model in [Example 1-6](#) uses a parameter to determine the register bit-width; the default width is declared as 8.

**Example 1-6 Register Model**

```

module DFF ( in1, clk, out1 );
  parameter SIZE = 8;
  input [SIZE-1:0] in1;
  input clk;
  output [SIZE-1:0] out1;
  reg [SIZE-1:0] out1;
  reg [SIZE-1:0] tmp;

  always @(clk)
    if (clk == 0)
      tmp = in1;
    else //(clk == 1)
      out1 <= tmp;
endmodule

```

If you want an instance of the register model to have a bit-width of 16, use the `elaborate` command to specify this as follows:

```
elaborate DFF -param SIZE=16
```

The `list_designs` command shows the design, as follows:

```
DFF_SIZE16 (*)
```

Using the `read_verilog` command to build a design with parameters is not recommended because you can build a design only with the default of the parameters.

You also need to either set the `hdlin_auto_save_templates` variable to true or insert the `template` directive in the module, as follows:

```

module DFF ( in1, clk, out1 );
  parameter SIZE = 8;
  input [SIZE-1:0] in1;
  input clk;
  output [SIZE-1:0] out1;
  // synopsys template
  ...

```

The following three variables control the naming convention for templates:

`hdlin_template_naming_style`, `hdlin_template_parameter_style`, and `hdlin_template_separator_style`. For more information, see the man pages.



---

## Reading Large Designs

To easily read designs containing several HDL source files and libraries, use the `analyze` command with the `-vcs` option. VCS-style `analyze` provides better compatibility with VCS command options and makes it easier to read in large designs. This feature enables automatic resolution of instantiated designs by searching for the referenced designs in user-specified libraries and then loading these designs. Use the following options with `-vcs`:

```
[ -sverilog | -verilog ]
[ -y directory_path ]
[ +libext+extension1+... ]
[ -v library_file ]
[ -f command_file ]
[ +define+macro_name+... ]
[ +incdir+directory_path+... ]
```

For example, to read in a design containing Verilog modules and SystemVerilog modules and interfaces, execute the following commands:

```
analyze -vcs "-verilog -y mylibdir1 +libext+.v -v myfile1
+incdir+myincludedir1
-f mycmdfile2" top.v
analyze -vcs "-sverilog -y ./mylibdir2 +libext+.sv -v ./myfile2
+define+SYNOPSIS "
top.sv

elaborate top
```

The following limitations apply when you use the `analyze -vcs` command:

- Language elements other than modules, such as interfaces and structures, cannot be picked up from libraries or files using the `-y` and `-v` options.
- A macro can be defined, but a value cannot be assigned to it. The value definition with `+define` is not supported.

These options follow the VCS command line syntax. For more details, see the VCS documentation and the `analyze` man page.

---

## Use of \$display During RTL Elaboration

The `$display` system task is usually used to report simulation progress. In synthesis, HDL Compiler executes `$display` calls as it sees them and executes all the display statements on all the paths through the program as it elaborates the design. It usually cannot tell the value of variables, except compile-time constants like loop iteration counters.

Note that because HDL Compiler executes all \$display calls, error messages from the Verilog source can be executed and can look like unexpected messages.

Using \$display is useful for printing out any compile-time computations on parameters or the number of times a loop executes, as shown in [Example 1-7](#).

#### Example 1-7 \$display Example

```
module F (in, out, clk);
  parameter SIZE = 1;
  input [SIZE-1: 0] in;
  output [SIZE-1: 0] out;
  reg [SIZE-1: 0] out;
  input clk;
  // ...
  `ifdef SYNTHESIS
    always $display("Instantiating F, SIZE=%d", SIZE);
  `endif
endmodule

module TOP (in, out, clk);
  input [33:0] in;
  output [33:0] out;
  input clk;

  F #( 2)  F2 (in[ 1:0] ,out[ 1:0], clk);
  F #(32) F32 (in[33:2], out[33:2], clk);
endmodule
```

HDL Compiler produces output such as the following during elaboration:

```
dc_shell> elaborate TOP
Running HDLC
HDL compilation completed successfully.
Elaborated 1 design.
Current design is now 'TOP'.
Information: Building the design 'F' instantiated from design 'TOP' with
            the parameters "2". (HDL-193)
$display output: Instantiating F, SIZE=2
HDL compilation completed successfully.
Information: Building the design 'F' instantiated from design 'TOP' with
            the parameters "32". (HDL-193)
$display output: Instantiating F, SIZE=32
HDL compilation completed successfully.
```

---

## Inputs and Outputs

This section contains the following topics:

- [Input Descriptions](#)

- [Design Hierarchy](#)
- [Component Inference and Instantiation](#)
- [Naming Considerations](#)
- [Generic Netlists](#)
- [Inference Reports](#)
- [Error Messages](#)

---

## Input Descriptions

Verilog code input to HDL Compiler can contain both structural and functional (RTL) descriptions. A Verilog structural description can define a range of hierarchical and gate-level constructs, including module definitions, module instantiations, and netlist connections.

The functional elements of a Verilog description for synthesis include

- always statements
- Tasks and functions
- Assignments
  - Continuous—are outside always blocks
  - Procedural—are inside always blocks and can be either blocking or nonblocking
- Sequential blocks (statements between a begin and an end)
- Control statements
- Loops—for, while, forever

The forever loop is only supported if it has an associated disable condition, making the exit condition deterministic.

- case and if statements

Functional and structural descriptions can be used in the same module, as shown in [Example 1-8](#).

In this example, the `detect_logic` function determines whether the input bit is a 0 or a 1. After making this determination, `detect_logic` sets `ns` to the next state of the machine. An always block infers flip-flops to hold the state information between clock cycles. These statements use a functional description style. A structural description style is used to instantiate the three-state buffer `t1`.

**Example 1-8 Mixed Structural and Functional Descriptions**

```

// This finite state machine (Mealy type) reads one
// bit per clock cycle and detects three or more
// consecutive 1s.
module three_ones( signal, clock, detect, output_enable );
  input signal, clock, output_enable;
  output detect;
  // Declare current state and next state variables.
  reg [1:0] cs;
  reg [1:0] ns;
  wire ungated_detect;
  // Declare the symbolic names for states.
  parameter NO_ONES = 0, ONE_ONE = 1,
            TWO_ONES = 2, AT_LEAST_THREE_ONES = 3;
  // ***** STRUCTURAL DESCRIPTION *****
  // Instance of a three-state gate that enables output
  three_state t1 (ungated_detect, output_enable, detect);

  // ***** FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION *****
  // always block infers flip-flops to hold the state of
  // the FSM.
  always @ ( posedge clock ) begin
    cs = ns;
  end
  // Combinational function
  function detect_logic;
    input [1:0] cs;
    input signal;

    begin
      detect_logic = 0;    //default
      if ( signal == 0 )   //bit is zero
        ns = NO_ONES;
      else                 //bit is one, increment state
        case (cs)
          NO_ONES: ns = ONE_ONE;
          ONE_ONE: ns = TWO_ONES;
          TWO_ONES, AT_LEAST_THREE_ONES:
            begin
              ns = AT_LEAST_THREE_ONES;
              detect_logic = 1;
            end
        endcase
    end
  endfunction
  assign ungated_detect = detect_logic( cs, signal );
endmodule

```

---

## Design Hierarchy

The HDL Compiler tool maintains the hierarchical boundaries you define when you use structural Verilog. These boundaries have two major effects:

- Each module in HDL descriptions is synthesized separately and maintained as a distinct design. The constraints for the design are maintained, and each module can be optimized separately in the Design Compiler tool.
- Module instantiations within HDL descriptions are maintained during input. The instance names that you assign to user-defined components are propagated through the gate-level implementation.

**Note:**

The HDL Compiler tool does not automatically create the hierarchy for nonstructural Verilog constructs, such as blocks, loops, functions, and tasks. These elements of HDL descriptions are translated in the context of their designs. To group the gates in a block, function, or task, you can use the `group -hdl_block` command after reading in a Verilog design. The HDL Compiler tool supports only the top-level `always` blocks. Due to optimization, small blocks might not be available for grouping. To report blocks available for grouping, use the `list_hdl_blocks` command. For information about how to use the `group` command with Verilog designs, see the man page.

---

## Component Inference and Instantiation

There are two ways to define components in your Verilog description:

- You can directly instantiate registers into a Verilog description, selecting from any element in your ASIC library, but the code is technology dependent and the description is difficult to write.
- You can use Verilog constructs to direct HDL Compiler to infer registers from the description. The advantages are these:
  - The Verilog description is easier to write and the code is technology independent.
  - This method allows Design Compiler to select the type of component inferred, based on constraints.

If a specific component is necessary, use instantiation.

---

## Naming Considerations

The bus output instance names are controlled by the following variables:

`bus_naming_style` (controls names of elements of Verilog arrays) and `bus_inference_style` (controls bus inference style). To reduce naming conflicts, use caution when applying nondefault naming styles. For details, see the man pages.

---

## Generic Netlists

After HDL Compiler reads a design, it creates a generic netlist consisting of generic components, such as SEQGENs (see [“Generic Sequential Cells \(SEQGENs\)”](#) on page 4-2.)

For example, after HDL Compiler reads the my\_fsm design in [Example 1-9](#), it creates the generic netlist shown in [Example 1-10](#).

### *Example 1-9 my\_fsm Design*

```
module my_fsm (clk, rst, y);
  input clk, rst;
  output y;
  reg y;
  reg [2:0] current_state;
  parameter
    red    = 3'b001,
    green  = 3'b010,
    yellow = 3'b100;
  always @ (posedge clk or posedge rst)
    if (rst)
      current_state = red;
    else
      case (current_state)
        red:
          current_state = green;
        green:
          current_state = yellow;
        yellow:
          current_state = red;
        default:
          current_state = red;
      endcase
  always @ (current_state)
    if (current_state == yellow)
      y = 1'b1;
    else
      y = 1'b0;
endmodule
```

After HDL Compiler reads in the my\_fsm design, it outputs the generic netlist shown in [Example 1-10](#).

**Example 1-10 Generic Netlist**

```

module my_fsm ( clk, rst, y );
  input clk, rst;
  output y;
  wire  N0, N1, N2, N3, N4, N5, N6, N7, N8, N9, N10, N11, N12, N13, N14,
  N15,
        N16, N17, N18;
  wire  [2:0] current_state;

  GTECH_OR2 C10 ( .A(current_state[2]), .B(current_state[1]), .Z(N1) );
  GTECH_OR2 C11 ( .A(N1), .B(N0), .Z(N2) );
  GTECH_OR2 C14 ( .A(current_state[2]), .B(N4), .Z(N5) );
  GTECH_OR2 C15 ( .A(N5), .B(current_state[0]), .Z(N6) );
  GTECH_OR2 C18 ( .A(N15), .B(current_state[1]), .Z(N8) );
  GTECH_OR2 C19 ( .A(N8), .B(current_state[0]), .Z(N9) );
  \**SEQGEN** \current_state_reg[2] ( .clear(rst), .preset(1'b0),
    .next_state(N7), .clocked_on(clk), .data_in(1'b0), .enable(1'b0),
  .Q(
    current_state[2]), .synch_clear(1'b0), .synch_preset(1'b0),
    .synch_toggle(1'b0), .synch_enable(1'b1) );
  \**SEQGEN** \current_state_reg[1] ( .clear(rst), .preset(1'b0),
    .next_state(N3), .clocked_on(clk), .data_in(1'b0), .enable(1'b0),
  .Q(
    current_state[1]), .synch_clear(1'b0), .synch_preset(1'b0),
    .synch_toggle(1'b0), .synch_enable(1'b1) );
  \**SEQGEN** \current_state_reg[0] ( .clear(1'b0), .preset(rst),
    .next_state(N14), .clocked_on(clk), .data_in(1'b0),
  .enable(1'b0), .Q(
    current_state[0]), .synch_clear(1'b0), .synch_preset(1'b0),
    .synch_toggle(1'b0), .synch_enable(1'b1) );
  GTECH_NOT I_0 ( .A(current_state[2]), .Z(N15) );
  GTECH_OR2 C47 ( .A(current_state[1]), .B(N15), .Z(N16) );
  GTECH_OR2 C48 ( .A(current_state[0]), .B(N16), .Z(N17) );
  GTECH_NOT I_1 ( .A(N17), .Z(N18) );
  GTECH_OR2 C51 ( .A(N10), .B(N13), .Z(N14) );
  GTECH_NOT I_2 ( .A(current_state[0]), .Z(N0) );
  GTECH_NOT I_3 ( .A(N2), .Z(N3) );
  GTECH_NOT I_4 ( .A(current_state[1]), .Z(N4) );
  GTECH_NOT I_5 ( .A(N6), .Z(N7) );
  GTECH_NOT I_6 ( .A(N9), .Z(N10) );
  GTECH_OR2 C68 ( .A(N7), .B(N3), .Z(N11) );
  GTECH_OR2 C69 ( .A(N10), .B(N11), .Z(N12) );
  GTECH_NOT I_7 ( .A(N12), .Z(N13) );
  GTECH_BUF B_0 ( .A(N18), .Z(y) );
endmodule

```

The `report_cell` command lists the cells in a design. [Example 1-11](#) shows the `report_cell` output for my\_fsm design.

**Example 1-11 report\_cell Output**

```
dc_shell> report_cell
Information: Updating design information... (UID-85)
```

```
*****
Report : cell
Design : my_fsm
Version: B-2008.09
Date   : Tue Jul 15 07:11:02 2008
*****
```

```
Attributes:
  b - black box (unknown)
  c - control logic
  h - hierarchical
  n - noncombinational
  r - removable
  u - contains unmapped logic
```

Cell Attributes	Reference	Library	Area	
B_0	GTECH_BUF	gtech	0.000000	u
C10	GTECH_OR2	gtech	0.000000	u
C11	GTECH_OR2	gtech	0.000000	c, u
C14	GTECH_OR2	gtech	0.000000	u
C15	GTECH_OR2	gtech	0.000000	c, u
C18	GTECH_OR2	gtech	0.000000	u
C19	GTECH_OR2	gtech	0.000000	c, u
C47	GTECH_OR2	gtech	0.000000	u
C48	GTECH_OR2	gtech	0.000000	u
C51	GTECH_OR2	gtech	0.000000	u
C68	GTECH_OR2	gtech	0.000000	c, u
C69	GTECH_OR2	gtech	0.000000	c, u
I_0	GTECH_NOT	gtech	0.000000	u
I_1	GTECH_NOT	gtech	0.000000	u
I_2	GTECH_NOT	gtech	0.000000	u
I_3	GTECH_NOT	gtech	0.000000	u
I_4	GTECH_NOT	gtech	0.000000	u
I_5	GTECH_NOT	gtech	0.000000	u
I_6	GTECH_NOT	gtech	0.000000	u
I_7	GTECH_NOT	gtech	0.000000	c, u
current_state_reg[0]	**SEQGEN**		0.000000	n, u
current_state_reg[1]	**SEQGEN**		0.000000	n, u
current_state_reg[2]	**SEQGEN**		0.000000	n, u
Total 23 cells			0.000000	
1				



---

## Inference Reports

HDL Compiler generates inference reports for the following inferred components:

- Flip-flops and latches, described in [“Inference Reports for Registers” on page 4-4](#).
- MUX\_OP cells, described in [“MUX\\_OP Inference” on page 3-15](#).
- Three-state devices, described in [“Three-State Driver Inference Report” on page 6-2](#).
- Multibit devices, described in [“infer\\_multibit and dont\\_infer\\_multibit” on page 7-9](#).
- FSMs, described in [“FSM Inference Report” on page 5-6](#).

---

## Error Messages

If the design contains syntax errors, these are typically reported as ver-type errors; mapping errors, which occur when the design is translated to the target technology, are reported as elab-type errors. An error will cause the script you are currently running to terminate; an error will terminate your Design Compiler session. Warnings are errors that do not stop the read from completing, but the results might not be as expected.

You set the `suppress_errors` variable to suppress warnings when reading Verilog source files. By default, the tool does not suppress any warnings. You can specify a list of warning codes for which warning messages are to be suppressed during the current shell session. This variable has no effect on error messages that stop the reading process.

You can also use this variable to disable specific warnings: set `suppress_errors` to a space-separated string of the error ID codes you want suppressed. Error ID codes are printed immediately after warning and error messages. For example, to suppress the following warning

```
Warning: Assertion statements are not supported. They are
ignored near symbol "assert" on line 24 (HDL-193).
```

set the variable to

```
suppress_errors = "HDL-193"
```

---

## Language Construct Support

HDL Compiler supports only those constructs that can be synthesized, that is, realized in logic. For example, you cannot use simulation time as a trigger, because time is an element of the simulation process and cannot be realized in logic. See [Appendix B, “Verilog Language Support.”](#)

---

## Licenses

Reading and writing license requirements are listed in [Table](#) .

Reader	Reading license required		Writing license required	
	RTL	Netlist	RTL	Netlist
HDL Compiler	Yes	Yes	No	No
UNTI-Verilog (netlist reader)	Not applicable	No	Not applicable	No
Automatic detection (read_verilog)	Yes	Yes	Not applicable	Not applicable

# 2

## Coding Considerations

---

This chapter describes HDL Compiler synthesis coding considerations in the following sections:

- [Coding for QoR](#)
- [Creating Relative Placement Using HDL Compiler Directives](#)
- [General Verilog Coding Guidelines](#)
- [Guidelines for Interacting With Other Flows](#)

---

## Coding for QoR

The HDL Compiler tool optimizes a design to provide the best QoR independent of the coding style; however, the optimization of the design is limited by the design context information available. You can use the following techniques to provide the information for the tool to produce optimal results:

- The tool cannot determine whether an input of a module is a constant even if the upper-level module connects the input to a constant. Therefore, use a parameter instead of an input port to express an input as a constant.
- During compilation, constant propagation is the evaluation of expressions that contain constants. The tool uses constant propagation to reduce the hardware required to implement complex operators.

If you know that a variable is a constant, specify it as a constant. For example, a “+” operator with a constant high as an argument causes an increment operator rather than an adder. If both arguments of an operator are constants, no hardware is inferred because the tool can calculate the expression and insert the result into the circuit.

The same technique applies to designing comparators and shifters. When you shift a vector by a constant, the implementation requires only reordering (rewiring) the bits without hardware implementation.

---

## Creating Relative Placement Using HDL Compiler Directives

Relative placement technology allows you to create structures in which you specify the relative column and row positions of instances. During placement and optimization, these structures are preserved and the cells in each structure are placed as a single entity.

Relative placement is usually applied to datapaths and registers, but you can apply it to any cells in your design, controlling the exact relative placement topology of gate-level logic groups and defining the circuit layout. You can use the relative placement capability to explore QoR benefits, such as shorter wire lengths, reduced congestion, better timing, skew control, fewer vias, better yield, and lower dynamic and leakage power.

These topics describe how to create relative placement by specifying the HDL compiler directives:

- [HDL Compiler Directives for Relative Placement](#)
- [Relative Placement Restrictions](#)
- [Specifying Relative Placement Groups](#)
- [Specifying Subgroups, Keepouts, and Instances](#)

- [Enabling Automatic Cell Placement](#)
- [Specifying Placement for Array Elements](#)
- [Specifying Cell Alignment](#)
- [Specifying Cell Orientation](#)
- [Ignoring Relative Placement](#)
- [Relative Placement Examples](#)

---

## HDL Compiler Directives for Relative Placement

This table lists the HDL compiler directives for relative placement in RTL designs and HDL netlists. A check mark (X) indicates that the directive is applicable and supported for the design format.

*Table 2-1 HDL Compiler Directives for Relative Placement*

HDL compiler directive	RTL design	HDL netlist	Usage reference
<code>`rp_group</code> and <code>`rp_endgroup</code>	X	X	<a href="#">Specifying Relative Placement Groups</a>
<code>`rp_place</code>	X	X	<a href="#">Specifying Subgroups, Keepouts, and Instances</a>
<code>`rp_fill</code>	X	X	<a href="#">Enabling Automatic Cell Placement</a>
<code>`rp_array_dir</code>	X		<a href="#">Specifying Placement for Array Elements</a>
<code>`rp_align</code>		X	<a href="#">Specifying Cell Alignment</a>
<code>`rp_orient</code>		X	<a href="#">Specifying Cell Orientation</a>
<code>`rp_ignore</code> and <code>`rp_endignore</code>		X	<a href="#">Ignoring Relative Placement</a>

---



---

## Relative Placement Restrictions

Do not specify relative placement HDL compiler directives for RTL design and for HDL netlists in the same file. Other restrictions apply depending on the input format.

The following restrictions apply to RTL designs:

- Specify relative placement directives only on register banks.

- To perform relative placement on leaf-level registers, you must specify the relative placement directives inside an `always` block that infers registers, but not combinational logic.

If an `always` block does not infer registers, the tool generates an ELAB-2 error message.

The following restrictions apply to HDL netlists, including GTECH netlists and mapped netlists:

- You must use the HDL Compiler netlist reader to read HDL netlists.
- For GTECH netlists, apply relative placement directives only to cells that have a one-to-one mapping of the library cell.

Relative placement directives can be applied to cells such as AND gates, OR gates, and D flip-flops. Relative placement directives cannot be applied to cells such as SEQGENs, SELECT\_OPs, MUX\_OPs, and DesignWare components.

- For mapped netlists, you can apply relative placement directives to any cell.

#### See Also

- [Generic Sequential Cells \(SEQGENs\)](#)
- [SELECT\\_OP Inference](#)
- [MUX\\_OP Inference](#)
- [Synthetic Operators](#)

---

## Specifying Relative Placement Groups

To specify a relative placement group in an RTL design or HDL netlist (a GTECH netlist or mapped netlist), use the ``rp_group` and ``rp_endgroup` directive pair.

The syntax for the directive pair is as follows:

- Verilog syntax for RTL designs

```
`rp_group ( group_name {num_cols num_rows} )
`rp_endgroup ( {group_name} )
```

For leaf-level relative placement groups, specify the directives inside an `always` block. High-level hierarchical groups do not have to be included in an `always` block.

- Syntax for HDL netlists

```
//synopsys rp_group ( group_name {num_cols num_rows} )
//synopsys rp_endgroup ( {group_name} )
```

Place all cell instances between the directives to declare them as members of the specified relative placement group.

To specify the size of the relative placement group, use the *num\_cols* and *num\_rows* optional arguments for the number of columns and number of rows. The tool ensures that all instances in the group is placed inside the specified size limits. The tool issues an error message for a size violation.

The following example shows that relative placement group *rp\_grp1* contains the inferred register:

```
...
always @ (posedge CLK)
  `rp_group (rp_grp1)
  ...
  `rp_endgroup (rp_grp1)
    Q1 <= DATA1;
...
```

---

## Specifying Subgroups, Keepouts, and Instances

To place a subgroup, a keepout region, or an instance in the current relative placement group of an RTL design or HDL netlist, use the ``rp_place` directive. When you specify a subgroup at a specific hierarchy, you must instantiate the subgroup instance outside any group declaration in the module.

The syntax for the ``rp_place` directive is as follows:

- Verilog syntax for RTL designs

```
`rp_place ( hier group_name col row )
`rp_place ( keep keepout_name col row width height )
`rp_place ({leaf} [inst_name] col row )
```

- Syntax for HDL netlists

```
//synopsys rp_place ( hier group_name col row )
//synopsys rp_place ( hier group_name [inst_name] col row )
//synopsys rp_place ({leaf} [inst_name] col row )
//synopsys rp_place ( keep keepout_name col row width height )
```

Use the *col* and *row* arguments to specify absolute column and row coordinates in the grid of the relative placement group or a location relative to the current coordinates (the location of the current instance). To specify locations relative to the current coordinates, enclose the column and row coordinates in angle brackets (<>). No brackets for absolute locations. If you do not specify the *col* and *row* arguments, a new instance is automatically placed in the available grid at the specified location. After the instance is placed, the tool increments the column and row coordinates of the location for the next cell.

The following example shows that group `my_group_1` is placed at location (0,0) in the grid and group `my_group_2` is placed at the next row position (0,1):

```
`rp_place (my_group_1 0 0)
`rp_place (my_group_2 0 <1>)
```

The following example shows that relative placement group `my_reg_bank` contains four subgroups at the following locations: (0,0), (0,1), (1,\*), and (1,\*). The wildcard character (\*) indicates that the tool can choose any value for a coordinate in the group.

```
`rp_group (my_reg_bank)
`rp_place (hier rp_grp1 0 0)
`rp_place (hier rp_grp4 0 1)
`rp_place (hier rp_grp2 1 *)
`rp_place (hier rp_grp3 1 *)
`rp_endgroup (my_reg_bank)
```

### See Also

- [Enabling Automatic Cell Placement](#)

---

## Enabling Automatic Cell Placement

To enable the tool to place cells automatically at a specified location, use the ``rp_fill` directive for both RTL designs and HDL netlists.

The syntax for the ``rp_fill` directive is as follows:

- Verilog syntax for RTL designs

```
`rp_fill ( {col row} {pattern pat} )
```

- Syntax for HDL netlists

```
//synopsys rp_fill ( {col row} {pattern pat} )
```

When you specify the `col` and `row` arguments, the tool places each new instance in the grid at the specified location. The default is column zero and row zero (0,0). After the instance is placed, the tool increments the column and row coordinates of the location for the next cell.

- To specify the placement location, use the `col` and `row` arguments

The `col` and `row` arguments represent absolute column and row coordinates in the grid at the specified location or a location relative to the current coordinates (the location of the current instance). To specify locations relative to the current coordinates, enclose the column and row coordinates in angle brackets (<>). No brackets for absolute location. You must use positive integers for absolute coordinates and any integer for relative coordinates.



For example, if the specified location is (3,4), you can increment the column coordinate by 1 and set the row coordinate to 0 by specifying ``rp_fill <1> 0`. The relative coordinates point to location (4,0) for the next cell.

- To specify the placement direction, use the `pattern` argument with the `UX`, `DX`, `RX`, or `LX` keyword for up, down, right, or left direction respectively.

The default is `UX`, where the tool places cells in the up direction within a column. The `RX` pattern fills a row with cells. If no pattern is specified for a cell, the tool uses the incremental location of the last pattern. If you do not specify the `col` and `row` arguments, the tool uses the previous pattern. When the tool encounters a group declaration, it initializes the placement location to (0,0) with the `UX` pattern.

When the tool encounters an array of instantiation in Verilog, the array cells are enumerated to match the pattern iterating from the left index to the right index, as shown in the following example:

```
and a[0:2] ( ); // generates a[0], a[1], a[2]
```

The following example uses the `UX` and `RX` patterns for relative placement group `group_x` in an HDL netlist:

```
//synopsys rp_group (group_x)
//synopsys rp_fill (0 0 UX)
Cell C1 (...);
Cell C2 (...);
Cell C3 (...);
//synopsys rp_fill (0 <1> RX) // move up a row to the left, fill to R
Cell c4 (...);
Cell C5 (...);
Cell C6 (...);
//synopsys rp_endgroup (group_x)
```

---

## Specifying Placement for Array Elements

To place array elements in ascending or descending order in a relative placement group, use the ``rp_array_dir` directive with the `up` or `down` keyword for RTL designs. You cannot use this directive for HDL netlists.

The Verilog syntax for RTL designs is as follows:

```
`rp_array_dir ( up|down )
```

The `up` keyword indicates to place array elements from the least significant bit to the most significant bit, and the `down` keyword indicates to place array elements from the most significant bit to the least significant bit. The following example shows that the array elements are placed in the up direction:

```

...
always @ (posedge CLK)
  `rp_group (rp_grp1/
    `rp_fill (0 0 UX)
    `rp_array_dir (up)
    `rp_endgroup (rp_grp1)
    Q1 <= DATA1 ;
...

```

---

## Specifying Cell Alignment

When an instance is smaller than the grid size, use the ``rp_align` directive to specify the alignment of the instance in HDL netlists. You cannot use this directive for RTL designs.

The syntax for HDL netlists is as follows:

```
//synopsys rp_align ( n|s|e|w|nw|sw|ne|se|pin=name { inst } )
```

By default, the tool applies the specified alignment to all subsequent instantiations within the group until the tool encounters another ``rp_align` directive. If you do not specify an alignment, the default is `sw`. If you specify the `inst` instance name argument, the alignment applies only to that instance. If the instance straddles cells, the alignment takes place within the straddled region. The instance is snapped to legal row and routing grid coordinates. You must specify either the alignment or the pin name.

The following example specifies to place cell C1 at the northeast corner:

```

//synopsys rp_group (group_x)
//synopsys rp_fill ( 0 0 RX )
//synopsys rp_align (NE C1 )
Cell C1 ...
Cell C2 ...
Cell C3 ...
//synopsys rp_fill ( 0 <1> RX )
Cell C4 ...
Cell C5 ...
Cell C6 ...
//synopsys rp_endgroup (group_x)

```

---

## Specifying Cell Orientation

To control the placement orientation of library cells in the current group in HDL netlists, use the ``rp_orient` directive. You cannot use this directive for RTL designs. When you specify a list of possible orientations, the tool chooses the first legal orientation.

The HDL netlist syntax is as follows:

- `//synopsys rp_orient ( {N|W|S|E|FN|FW|FS|FE}* { inst } )`

When you use the *inst* argument, the orientation is applied to the specified instance only. If you do not specify an instance, the orientation applies to all subsequent instances until another orientation is specified.

- `//synopsys rp_orient ( {N|W|S|E|FN|FW|FS|FE}* { group_name inst } )`

When you use the *group\_name inst* argument, the orientation is applied to the specified instance and the rest of the group remains unchanged. The default orientation is *N*, which stands for no flipping rotation at the horizontal axis and no mirror orientation at the vertical axis. The *FN*, *FW*, *FS*, and *FE* orientations stand for flipping north, flipping west, flipping south, and flipping east respectively.

The following example specifies to place cell C1 in the west direction:

```
//synopsys rp_group (group_x)
...
//synopsys rp_orient (W C1)
Cell C0 ...
Cell C1 ...
...
```

---

## Ignoring Relative Placement

To ignore lines in HDL netlists, use the ``rp_ignore` and ``rp_endignore` directive pair. During relative placement, the tool omits any lines encapsulated by the directive pair except the ``include` and ``define` directives, variable substitution, and cell mapping. You cannot use this directive pair for RTL designs.

You can use this directive pair to place the instantiations of submodules in a relative placement group close to the ``rp_place hier group(inst)` location for relative placement arrays.

The HDL netlist syntax is as follows:

```
//synopsys rp_ignore
...
//synopsys rp_endignore
```

The following example ignores the directive `//synopsys rp_fill ( 0 <1> RX )`:

```
//synopsys rp_group (group_x)
//synopsys rp_fill ( 0 0 RX )
Cell C1 ...
Cell C2 ...
Cell C3 ...
//synopsys rp_ignore
//synopsys rp_fill ( 0 <1> RX )
//synopsys rp_endignore
Cell C4 ...
Cell C5 ...
```

```
Cell C6 ...
//synopsys rp_endgroup (group_x)
```

---

## Relative Placement Examples

This section provides examples that use HDL Compiler directives for relative placement.

- [Relative Placement Example 1](#)
- [Relative Placement Example 2](#)
- [Relative Placement Example 3](#)
- [Relative Placement Example 4](#)

### Relative Placement Example 1

This example shows how to apply the ``rp_group`, ``rp_place`, ``rp_fill`, and ``rp_array_dir` directives to several register banks in an RTL design for relative placement.

#### *Example 2-1 Relative Placement Using HDL Compiler Directives*

```
module dff_async_reset (
    input [7:0] DATA1, DATA2, DATA3, DATA4,
    input CLK, RESET,
    output reg [7:0] Q1, Q2, Q3, Q4
);
    `rp_group (my_reg_bank)
    `rp_place (hier rp_grp1 * 0)
    `rp_place (hier rp_grp2 * 0)
    `rp_endgroup (my_reg_bank)

    always @(posedge CLK or posedge RESET)
    begin
        `rp_group (rp_grp1)
        `rp_fill (0 0 UX)
        `rp_array_dir(up)
        `rp_endgroup (rp_grp1)
        if (RESET) Q1 <= 8'b0;
        else Q1 <= DATA1;
    end

    always @(posedge CLK or posedge RESET)
    `rp_group (rp_grp2)
    `rp_fill (0 0 UX)
    `rp_array_dir(down)
    `rp_endgroup (rp_grp2)
    if (RESET) Q2 <= 8'b0;
    else Q2 <= DATA2;

    always @(posedge CLK or posedge RESET)
```

```

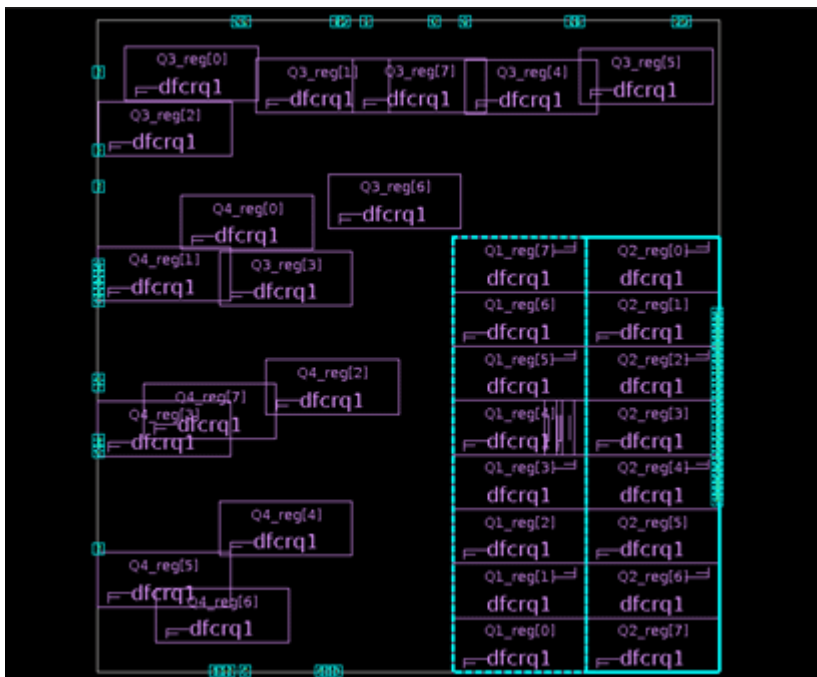
if (RESET) Q3 <= 8'b0;
else Q3 <= DATA3;

always @(posedge CLK or posedge RESET)
  if (RESET) Q4 <= 8'b0;
  else Q4 <= DATA4;
endmodule

```

Figure 2-1 shows the layout of this example after relative placement. The register banks that are constrained by the HDL compiler directives have a well-structured layout, while the register banks that are not constrained by the directives are not placed together.

Figure 2-1 Layout With Relative Placement Specified on Several Register Banks



## Relative Placement Example 2

This example shows how to use the `'rp_array_dir` directive to place relative placement groups vertically.

In this example, the array elements in relative placement groups `rp_grp2` and `rp_grp4` are placed in the down direction from element (7) to element (0) starting at row 0. The array elements in relative placement groups `rp_grp1` and `rp_grp3` are placed in the up direction from element (0) to element (7) starting at row 0.

### Example 2-2 Relative Placement Groups Placed Vertically

```

module dff_async_reset (

```

```

    input [7:0] DATA1, DATA2, DATA3, DATA4,
    input CLK, RESET,
    output reg [7:0] Q1, Q2, Q3, Q4
);
`rp_group (my_reg_bank)
`rp_place (hier rp_grp1 * 0)
`rp_place (hier rp_grp2 * 0)
`rp_place (hier rp_grp3 * 0)
`rp_place (hier rp_grp4 * 0)
`rp_endgroup (my_reg_bank)

always @(posedge CLK or posedge RESET)
begin
    `rp_group (rp_grp1)
    `rp_fill (0 0 UX)
    `rp_array_dir(up)
    `rp_endgroup (rp_grp1)
    if (RESET) Q1 <= 8'b0;
    else Q1 <= DATA1;
end

always @(posedge CLK or posedge RESET)
    `rp_group (rp_grp2)
    `rp_fill (0 0 UX)
    `rp_array_dir(down)
    `rp_endgroup (rp_grp2)
    if (RESET) Q2 <= 8'b0;
    else Q2 <= DATA2;

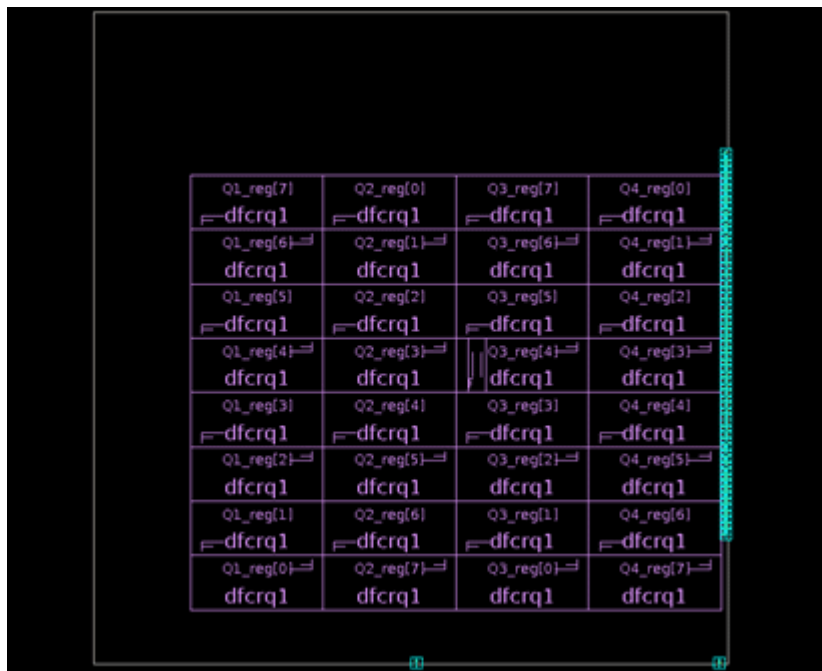
always @(posedge CLK or posedge RESET)
    `rp_group (rp_grp3)
    `rp_fill (0 0 UX)
    `rp_array_dir(up)
    `rp_endgroup (rp_grp3)
    if (RESET) Q3 <= 8'b0;
    else Q3 <= DATA3;

always @(posedge CLK or posedge RESET)
    `rp_group (rp_grp4)
    `rp_fill (0 0 UX)
    `rp_array_dir(down)
    `rp_endgroup (rp_grp4)
    if (RESET) Q4 <= 8'b0;
    else Q4 <= DATA4;
endmodule

```

**Figure 2-2** shows the generated layout where each relative placement group consists of one array and each group is placed vertically.

Figure 2-2 Relative Placement Groups Placed Vertically



### Relative Placement Example 3

This example shows how to use the ``rp_fill` directive to place relative placement groups horizontally.

In this example, each relative placement group is placed horizontally because the ``rp_fill` directive is set to `RX`, which specifies the incremental row coordinate to the right of the initial position. The array elements in relative placement groups `rp_grp2` and `rp_grp4` are placed in the down direction from element (7) to element (0) starting at column 0. The array elements in relative placement groups `rp_grp1` and `rp_grp3` are placed in the up direction from the element (0) to element (7) starting at column 0.

Example 2-3 Relative Placement Groups Placed Horizontally

```
module dff_async_reset (
    input [7:0] DATA1, DATA2, DATA3, DATA4,
    input CLK, RESET,
    output reg [7:0] Q1, Q2, Q3, Q4
);
`rp_group (my_reg_bank)
`rp_place (hier rp_grp1 0 *)
`rp_place (hier rp_grp2 0 *)
`rp_place (hier rp_grp3 0 *)
`rp_place (hier rp_grp4 0 *)
`rp_endgroup (my_reg_bank)
```

```

always @(posedge CLK or posedge RESET)
begin
  `rp_group (rp_grp1)
  `rp_fill (0 0 RX)
  `rp_array_dir(up)
  `rp_endgroup (rp_grp1)
  if (RESET)
    Q1 <= 8'b0;
  else
    Q1 <= DATA1;
end

always @(posedge CLK or posedge RESET)
  `rp_group (rp_grp2)
  `rp_fill (0 0 RX)
  `rp_array_dir(down)
  `rp_endgroup (rp_grp2)
  if (RESET)
    Q2 <= 8'b0;
  else
    Q2 <= DATA2;

always @(posedge CLK or posedge RESET)
  `rp_group (rp_grp3)
  `rp_fill (0 0 RX)
  `rp_array_dir(up)
  `rp_endgroup (rp_grp3)
  if (RESET)
    Q3 <= 8'b0;
  else
    Q3 <= DATA3;

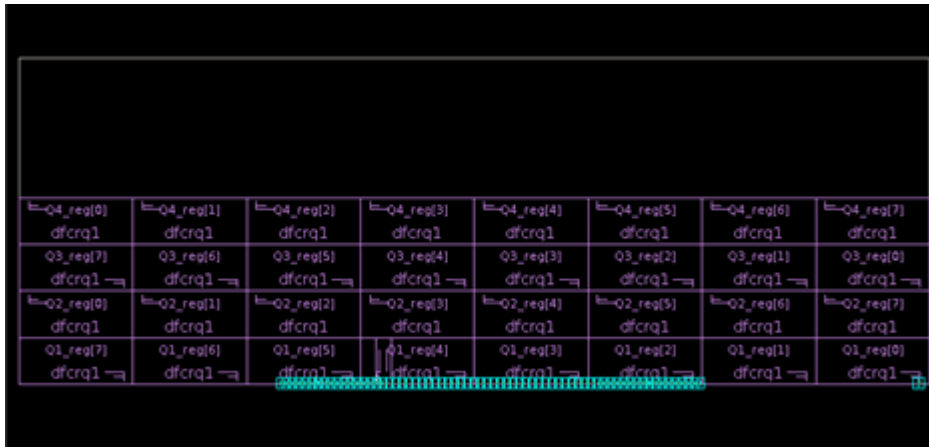
always @(posedge CLK or posedge RESET)
  `rp_group (rp_grp4)
  `rp_fill (0 0 RX)
  `rp_array_dir(down)
  `rp_endgroup (rp_grp4)
  if (RESET)
    Q4 <= 8'b0;
  else
    Q4 <= DATA4;
endmodule

```

**Figure 2-3** shows the generated layout where each relative placement group consists of one array and each group is placed horizontally.



Figure 2-3 Relative Placement Groups Placed Horizontally



## Relative Placement Example 4

This example uses wildcard characters to infer keepouts in relative placement groups.

In this example, the design has a pipelined structure with combinational logic between register banks. At the top level, the top relative placement group contains wildcard characters for columns. Because of the wildcard characters, the tool infers keepouts in the relative placement groups to reserve space for combinational logic. To prevent the tool from inferring keepouts, use numbers instead of wildcard characters.

### Example 2-4 Relative Placement Groups With Keepouts

```
module pipe (
    input clk,
    input [3:0] in1, in2,
    output logic [3:0] out
);
logic [3:0] tmp1, tmp2, tmp3;
assign tmp1 = in1 & in2;
assign tmp3 = tmp2 | in2;

always @ (posedge clk)
    `rp_group (gp0)
    `rp_fill (0 0 UX)
    `rp_array_dir (up)
    `rp_endgroup (gp0)
    tmp2 <= tmp1;

always @ (posedge clk)
    `rp_group (gp1)
    `rp_fill (0 0 UX)
    `rp_array_dir (up)
    `rp_endgroup (gp1)
```

```

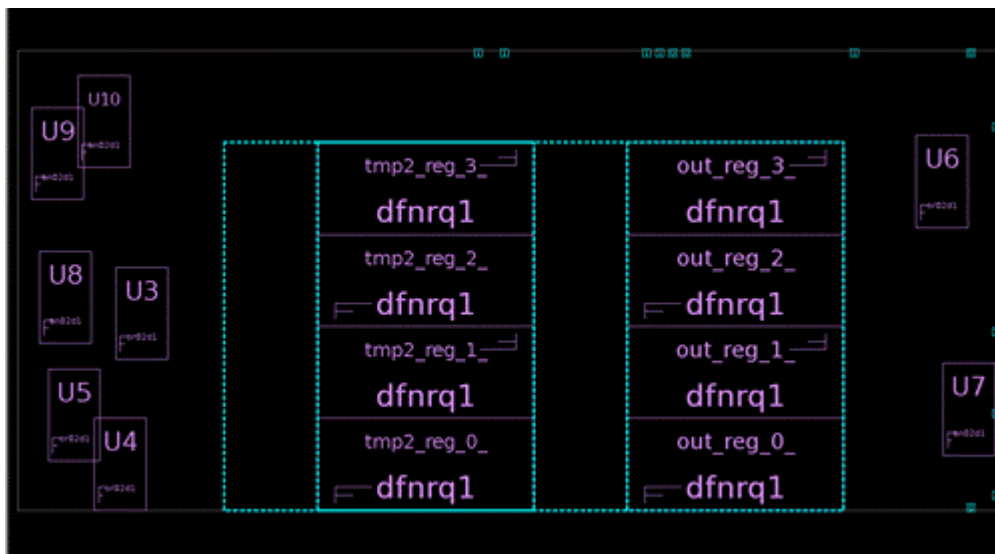
out <= tmp3;

`rp_group (top)
`rp_place (hier gp0 * 0)
`rp_place (hier gp1 * 0)
`rp_endgroup (top)
endmodule

```

Figure 2-4 shows the generated layout where keepouts are inferred in the relative placement groups.

Figure 2-4 Relative Placement Groups With Keepouts



## General Verilog Coding Guidelines

This topic describes the general Verilog coding guidelines.

- [Separate Sequential and Combinational Assignments](#)
- [Persistent Variable Values Across Functions and Tasks](#)
- [defparam](#)

### Separate Sequential and Combinational Assignments

To create separate sequential and combinational assignments, use an edge-triggered `always` block for the sequential assignments and a signal-triggered `always` block for the combinational assignments. Use this technique to create Mealy machines, as shown in the following example where signal `out` changes asynchronously with inputs `in1` or `in2`.

**Example 2-5 Mealy Machine Example**

```

module mealy (
    input in1, in2, clk, reset,
    output reg out
);
reg current_state, next_state;
always @(posedge clk or negedge reset)
// state vector flip-flops (sequential)
if (!reset) current_state <= 0;
else      current_state <= next_state;

always @(in1 or in2 or current_state)
// output and state vector decode (combinational)
case (current_state)
0: begin
    next_state = 1;
    out        = 1'b0;
end
1: if (in1) begin
    next_state = 1'b0;
    out        = in2;
end
    else begin
    next_state = 1'b1;
    out        = !in2;
end
endcase
endmodule

```

**Persistent Variable Values Across Functions and Tasks**

During Verilog simulation, a local variable in a function or task has a static lifetime by default. The tool allocates memory for the variable only at the beginning of the simulation, and the recent value written of the variable is preserved from one call to another. During synthesis, the HDL Compiler tool assumes that functions and tasks do not depend on the previous written values and reinitializes all static variables in functions and tasks to unknowns at the beginning of each call.

Verilog code that does not conform to this synthesis assumption can cause a synthesis and simulation mismatch. You should declare all functions and tasks by using the `automatic` keyword, which instructs the simulator to allocate new memory for local variables at the beginning of each function or task call.

**defparam**

You should not use the `defparam` statements in synthesis because of ambiguity problems. Because of these problems, the `defparam` statements are not supported in the `generate` blocks. For more information, see the Verilog Language Reference Manual.

---

## Guidelines for Interacting With Other Flows

The design structure created by the HDL Compiler tool can affect commands applied to the design during the downstream design flows. The following topics provide guidelines for interacting with these flows during the `analyze` and `elaborate` steps:

- [Synthesis Flows](#)
- [Low-Power Flows](#)
- [Verification Flows](#)

---

### Synthesis Flows

The HDL Compiler tool can infer multibit components. If your logic library supports multibit components, they can offer several benefits, such as reduced area and power or a more regular structure for place and route. For more information about inferring multibit components, see [infer\\_multibit](#) and [dont\\_infer\\_multibit](#).

---

### Low-Power Flows

This topic provides guidelines to keep signal names in low-power flows:

- [Keeping Signal Names](#)
- [Using Same Naming Convention Between Tools](#)

#### Keeping Signal Names

During optimization, the HDL Compiler tool removes nets defined in the RTL, such as dead code and unconnected logic. If your downstream flow needs some of these nets, you can direct the tool to keep the nets by using the `hdlin_keep_signal_name` variable and the `keep_signal_name` directive. [Table 2-2](#) shows the variable settings.

Table 2-2 *hdlin\_keep\_signal\_name* Variable Settings

Setting	Description
all	The tool preserves a signal if the signal is preserved during optimization. Both dangling and driving nets are considered. Note: This setting might cause the <code>check_design</code> command to issue LINT-2 and LINT-3 warning messages.
all_driving (default)	The tool preserves a signal if the signal is preserved during optimization and is in an output path. Only driving nets are considered.
user	The tool preserves a signal if the signal is preserved during optimization and is marked with the <code>keep_signal_name</code> directive. Both dangling and driving nets are considered. This setting works with the <code>keep_signal_name</code> directive.
user_driving	The tool preserves a signal if the signal is preserved during optimization, is in an output path, and is marked with the <code>keep_signal_name</code> directive. Only driving nets are considered.
none	The tool does not preserve any signal. This setting overrides the <code>keep_signal_name</code> directive.

**Note:**

When a signal has no driver, the tool assumes logic 0 (ground) for the driver.

When you set the `enable_keep_signal` variable to `true`, the tool preserves nets and issues a warning about the preserved nets during compilation. The tool sets an implicit `size_only` attribute on the logic connected to the nets to be preserved. To mark a net to be preserved, label the net with the `keep_signal_name` directive in the RTL and set the `hdlin_keep_signal_name` variable to `user` or `user_driving`. Preserving nets might cause QoR degradation.

In [Example 2-6](#), the tool preserves signals `test1` and `test2` because they are in the output paths, but it does not preserve signal `test3` because it is not in an output path. The tool removes nets `syn1` and `syn2` during optimization.

**Example 2-6 Original RTL**

```

module test12 (
    input [3:0] in1,
    input [7:0] in2,
    input in3,
    input in4,
    output reg [7:0] out1, out2
);
wire test1, test2, test3, syn1, syn2;
//synopsys async_set_reset "in4"
assign test1 = ( in1[3] & ~in1[2] & in1[1] & ~in1[0] );
//test1 signal is in an input and output path
assign test2 = syn1+ syn2;
//test2 signal is in an output path, but not in an input path
assign test3 = in1 + in2;
//test3 signal is in an input path, but not in an output path
always @(in3 or in2 or in4 or test1)
    out2 = test2 + out1;
always @(in3 or in2 or in4 or test1)
    if (in4) out1 = 8'h0;
    else
        if (in3 & test1) out1 = in2;
endmodule

```

To preserve signal test3,

1. Enable the tool to preserve nets by setting the `enable_keep_signal` variable to `true`.
2. Set the `hdlin_keep_signal_name` variable to `user`.
3. Place the `keep_signal_name` directive on signal test3 after the signal declaration in the RTL. For example,

```

wire test1, test2, test3, syn1, syn2;
//synopsys keep_signal_name "test1 test2 test3"

```

Table 2-3 shows how the settings of the variable and directive affect the preservation of signals test1, test2, and test3. An asterisk (\*) indicates that the HDL Compiler tool does not attempt to preserve the signal.

**Table 2-3 Variable and Directive Matrix for Signals test1, test2, and test3**

<b>keep_signal_name</b>	<b>hdlin_keep_signal_name setting</b>				
<b>set or not set</b>	<b>all</b>	<b>all_driving</b>	<b>user</b>	<b>user_driving</b>	<b>none</b>
not set on test1	attempts to keep	attempts to keep	*	*	*
set on test1	attempts to keep	attempts to keep	attempts to keep	attempts to keep	*

*Table 2-3 Variable and Directive Matrix for Signals test1, test2, and test3 (Continued)*

keep_signal_name	hdlin_keep_signal_name setting				
	set or not set	all	all_driving	user	user_driving none
not set on test2		attempts to keep	attempts to keep	*	*
set on test2		attempts to keep	attempts to keep	attempts to keep	attempts to keep *
not set on test3 ( <a href="#">Example 2-6</a> )		attempts to keep	*	*	*
set on test3		attempts to keep	*	attempts to keep	*

### Using Same Naming Convention Between Tools

In some cases, switching activity annotation from a SAIF file might be rejected because of naming differences across multiple tools. To ensure synthesis object names follow the same naming convention used by simulation tools, set the following variable to improve the SAIF annotation:

```
dc_shell> set_app_var hdlin_enable_upf_compatible_naming true
```

### Verification Flows

To prevent simulation and synthesis mismatches, follow the guidelines described in this section. [Table 2-4](#) shows the coding styles that can cause simulation and synthesis mismatches and how to avoid the mismatches.

*Table 2-4 Coding Styles Causing Synthesis and Simulation Mismatches*

Synthesis and simulation mismatch	Coding technique
Using the <code>one_hot</code> and <code>one_cold</code> directives in a Verilog design that does not meet the requirements of the directives.	See <a href="#">one_hot</a> and <a href="#">one_cold</a> .
Using the <code>full_case</code> and <code>parallel_case</code> directives in a Verilog design that does not meet the requirements of the directives.	See <a href="#">full_case</a> and <a href="#">parallel_case</a> .
Inferring D flip-flops with synchronous and asynchronous loads.	See <a href="#">D Flip-Flop With Synchronous and Asynchronous Load</a> .

*Table 2-4 Coding Styles Causing Synthesis and Simulation Mismatches (Continued)*

Synthesis and simulation mismatch	Coding technique
Selecting bits from an array that is not valid.	See <a href="#">Part-Select Addressing Operators ([+:] and [-:])</a> .
When the set or reset signal is masked by an unknown during initialization in simulation.	See <a href="#">sync_set_reset</a> .
Using asynchronous design techniques.	The tool does not issue any warning for asynchronous designs. You must verify the design.
Using unknowns and high impedance in comparisons.	See <a href="#">Unknowns and High Impedance in Comparisons</a> .
Including timing control information in the design.	See <a href="#">Timing Specifications</a> .
Using incomplete sensitivity list.	See <a href="#">Sensitivity Lists</a> .
Using local <code>reg</code> variables in functions or tasks.	See <a href="#">Initial States for Variables</a> .

### Unknowns and High Impedance in Comparisons

A simulator evaluates an unknown (x) or high impedance (z) as a distinct value different from 0 or 1; however, an x or z value becomes a 0 or 1 during synthesis. In HDL Compiler, these values in comparisons are always evaluated to false. This behavior difference can cause simulation and synthesis mismatches. To prevent such mismatches, do not use don't care values in comparisons.

In the following example, simulators match 2'b1x to 11 or 10 and 2'b0x to 01 or 00, but both 2'b1x and 2'b0x are evaluated to false in the HDL Compiler tool. Because of the simulation and synthesis mismatches, the HDL Compiler tool issues an ELAB-310 warning.

```

case (A)
  2'b1x:... // You want 2'b1x to match 11 and 10 but
            // HDL Compiler always evaluates this comparison to false
  2'b0x:... // you want 2'b0x to match 00 and 01 but
            // HDL Compiler always evaluates this comparison to false
  default: ...
endcase

```

In the following example, because `if (A == 1'bx)` is evaluated to false, the tool assigns 1 to reg B and issues an ELAB-310 warning.



```

module test (
    input A,
    output reg B
);
always
begin
    if (A == 1'bx) B = 0;
    else          B = 1;
end
endmodule

```

## Timing Specifications

The HDL Compiler tool ignores all timing controls because these signals cannot be synthesized. You can include timing control information in the description if it does not change the value clocked into a flip-flop. In other words, the delay must be less than the clock period to avoid synthesis and simulation mismatches.

You can assign a delay to a `wire` or `wand` declaration, and you can use the `scalared` and `vectored` Verilog keywords for simulation. The tool supports the syntax of these constructs, but they are ignored during synthesis.

## Sensitivity Lists

When you run the HDL Compiler tool, a module is affected by all the signals in the module including those not listed in the sensitivity list. However, simulation relies only on the signals listed in the sensitivity list. To prevent synthesis and simulation mismatches, follow these guidelines to specify the sensitivity list:

- For sequential logic, include a clock signal and all asynchronous control signals in the sensitivity list.
- For combinational logic, ensure that all inputs are in the sensitivity list.
- To include all the signals read by the statements in an `always` block, use the `always @*` Verilog construct.

The tool ignores sensitivity lists that do not contain an edge expression and builds the logic as if all variables within the `always` block are listed in the sensitivity list. You cannot mix edge expressions and ordinary variables in the sensitivity list. If you do so, the tool issues an error. When the sensitivity list does not contain an edge expression, combinational logic is usually generated. Latches might be generated if the variable is not fully specified; that is, the variable is not assigned to any path in the block.

Note:

The statements `@(posedge clock)` and `@(negedge clock)` are not supported in functions or tasks.

### Initial States for Variables

For functions and tasks, any local `reg` variable is initialized to logic 0 and output port values are not preserved across function and task calls. However, values are typically preserved during simulation. This behavior difference often causes synthesis and simulation mismatches. For more information, see [Persistent Variable Values Across Functions and Tasks](#).

# 3

## Modeling Combinational Logic

---

Logic circuits can be divided into two general classes:

- Combinational – The value of the output depends only on the values of the input signals.
- Sequential – The value of the output depends only on the values of the input signals and the previous condition on the circuit.

This chapter discusses combinational logic synthesis in the following sections:

- [Synthetic Operators](#)
- [Logic and Arithmetic Expressions](#)
- [Multiplexing Logic](#)
- [MUX\\_OP Components With Variable Indexing](#)
- [Modeling Complex MUX Inferences: Bit and Memory Accesses](#)
- [Bit-Truncation Coding for DC Ultra Datapath Extraction](#)
- [Latches in Combinational Logic](#)

---

## Synthetic Operators

Synopsys provides a collection of intellectual property (IP), referred to as the DesignWare Basic IP Library, to support the synthesis products. Basic IP provides basic implementations of common arithmetic functions that can be referenced by HDL operators in your RTL source code.

The DesignWare paradigm is built on a hierarchy of abstractions. HDL operators (either built-in operators like + and \*, or HDL functions and procedures) are associated with synthetic operators, which are bound in turn to synthetic modules. Each synthetic module can have multiple architectural realizations, called implementations. When you use the HDL addition operator in a design description, HDL Compiler infers the need for an adder resource and puts an abstract representation of the addition operation into your circuit netlist. The same holds true when you instantiate a DesignWare component. For example, an instantiation of DW01\_add will be mapped to the synthetic operator associated with it. See [Figure 3-1 on page 3-3](#).

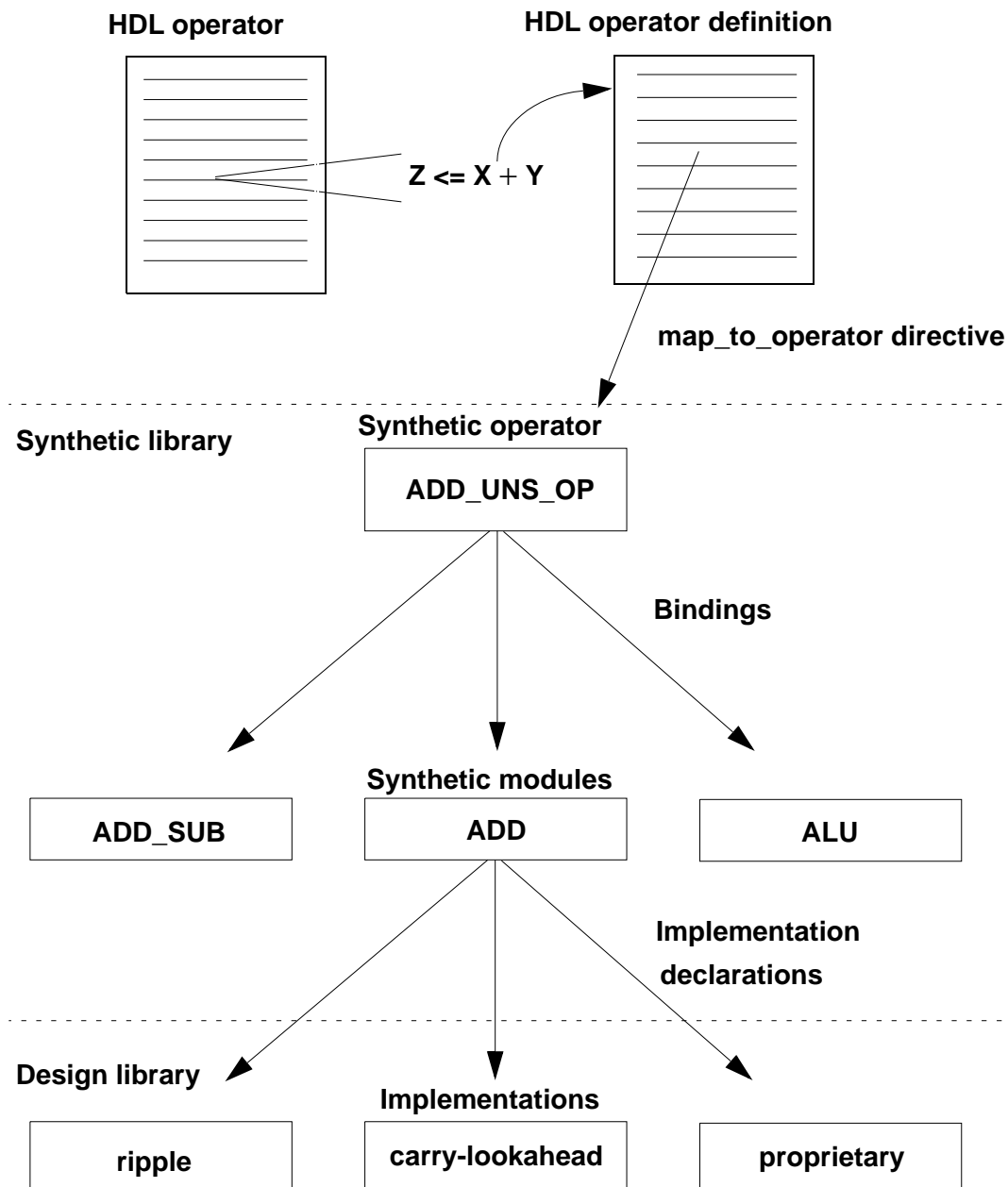
A synthetic library contains definitions for synthetic operators, synthetic modules, and bindings. It also contains declarations that associate synthetic modules with their implementations.

To display information about the standard synthetic library that is included with a Design Compiler license, use the `report_synlib` command:

```
report_synlib standard.sldb
```

For more information about DesignWare synthetic operators, modules, and libraries, see the DesignWare documentation.

Figure 3-1 DesignWare Hierarchy



---

## Logic and Arithmetic Expressions

The following sections discuss logic and arithmetic expression synthesis:

- [Basic Operators](#)
- [Carry-Bit Overflow](#)
- [Divide Operators](#)
- [Sign Conversions](#)

---

### Basic Operators

When HDL Compiler elaborates a design, it maps HDL operators to synthetic (DesignWare) operators that appear in the generic netlist. When Design Compiler optimizes the design, it maps these operators to DesignWare synthetic modules and chooses the best implementation, based on constraints, option settings, and wire load models.

A Design-Compiler license includes a DesignWare-Basic license that enables the DesignWare synthetic modules listed in [Table 3-1](#). These modules support common logic and arithmetic HDL operators. By default, adders and subtractors must be more than 4 bits wide to be mapped to these modules. If they are smaller, the operators are mapped to combinational logic.

*Table 3-1 Operators Supported by a DesignWare-Basic License*

HDL operator	Linked to DesignWare synthetic module
Comparison (> or <)	DW01_cmp2
Absolute value (abs)	DW01_absval
Addition (+)	DW01_add
Subtraction (-)	DW01_sub
Addition or subtraction (+ or -)	DW01_addsub
Increment (+)	DW01_inc
Decrement (-)	DW01_dec
Increment or decrement (+ or -)	DW01_incdec
Multiplier (*)	DW02_mult

---

## Carry-Bit Overflow

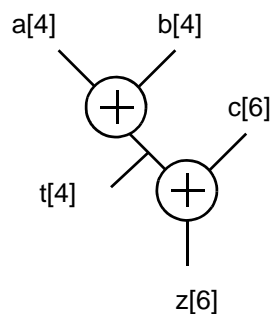
When Design Compiler performs arithmetic optimization, it considers how to handle the overflow from carry bits during addition. The optimized structure is affected by the bit-widths you declare for storing intermediate results. For example, suppose you write an expression that adds two 4-bit numbers and stores the result in a 4-bit register. If the result of the addition overflows the 4-bit output, the most significant bits are truncated. [Example 3-1](#) shows how overflow characteristics are handled.

### Example 3-1 Adding Numbers of Different Bit-Widths

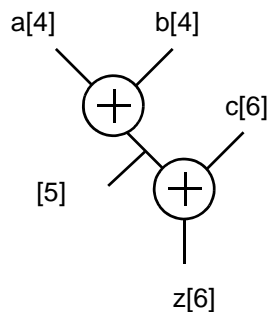
```
t <= a + b; // a and b are 4-bit numbers
z <= t + c; // c is a 6-bit number
```

In [Example 3-1](#), three variables are added ( $a + b + c$ ). A temporary variable,  $t$ , holds the intermediate result of  $a + b$ . Suppose  $t$  is declared as a 4-bit variable, so the overflow bits from the addition of  $a + b$  are truncated. HDL Compiler determines the default structure, which is shown in [Figure 3-2](#).

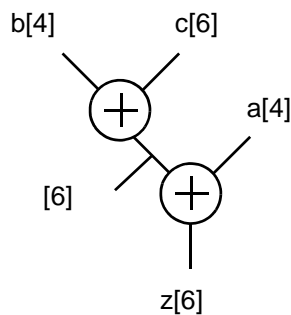
Figure 3-2 Default Structure With 4-Bit Temporary Variable



Now suppose the addition is performed without a temporary variable ( $z = a + b + c$ ). HDL Compiler determines that 5 bits are needed to store the intermediate result of the addition, so no overflow condition exists. The results of the final addition might be different from the first case, where a 4-bit temporary variable is declared that truncates the result of the intermediate addition. Therefore, these two structures do not always yield the same result. The structure for the second case is shown in [Figure 3-3](#).

*Figure 3-3 Structure With 5-Bit Intermediate Result*

Now suppose the expression is optimized for delay and that signal *a* arrives late. Design Compiler restructures the expression so that *b* and *c* are added first. Because *c* is declared as a 6-bit number, Design Compiler determines that the intermediate result must be stored in a 6-bit variable. The structure for this case, where signal *a* arrives late, is shown in [Figure 3-4](#). Note how this expression differs from the structure in [Figure 3-2](#).

*Figure 3-4 Structure for Late-Arriving Signal*

---

## Divide Operators

HDL Compiler supports division where the operands are not constant, such as in [Example 3-2](#), by instantiating a DesignWare divider, as shown in [Figure 3-5](#). Note that when you compile a design that contains an inferred divider, you must have a DesignWare license in addition to the DesignWare-Basic license.

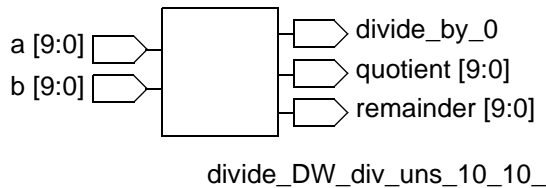


**Example 3-2 Divide Operator**

```

module divide (a, b, z);
  input  [9:0] a, b;
  output [8:0] z;
  assign z= a / b;
endmodule

```

**Figure 3-5 DesignWare Divider**

---

**Sign Conversions**

When reading a design that contains signed expressions and assignments, HDL Compiler warns you when there are sign mismatches by issuing a VER-318 warning.

Note that HDL Compiler does not issue a signed/unsigned conversion warning (VER-318) if all of the following conditions are true:

- The conversion is necessary only for constants in the expression.
- The width of the constant would not change as a result of the conversion.
- The most significant bit (MSB) of the constant is zero (nonnegative).

Consider [Example 3-3](#). Even though HDL Compiler implicitly converts the type of the constant 1, which is signed by default, to unsigned, the VER-318 warning is not issued because these three conditions are true. Integer constants are treated as signed types by default. Integers are considered to have signed values.

**Example 3-3 Mixed Unsigned and Signed Types**

```

input  [3:0] a, b;
output [5:0] z;
assign z = a + b + 1;

```

The VER-318 warning indicates that HDL Compiler has implicitly converted

- An unsigned expression to a signed expression
- A signed expression to an unsigned expression

or, it has assigned

- An unsigned right side to a signed left side
- A signed right side to an unsigned left side

For example, in this code,

```
reg signed [3:0] a;
reg [7:0] c;

a = 4'sb1010;
c = a+7'b0101011;
```

an implicit signed/unsigned conversion occurs—the signed operand `a` is converted to an unsigned value, and the VER-318 warning “signed to unsigned conversion occurs” is issued. Note that `a` will not be sign-extended. This behavior is in accordance with the Verilog 2001 standard.

When explicit type casting is used, conversion warnings are not issued. For example, in the preceding code, to force `a` to be unsigned, you assign `c` as follows:

```
c = $unsigned(a)+7'b0101011;
```

no warning is issued.

Consider the following assignment:

```
reg [7:0] a;

a = 4'sb1010;
```

A VER-318 warning “signed to unsigned assignment occurs” is issued when this code is read. Although the left side is unsigned, the right side will still be sign-extended; that is, `a` will have the value `8'b11111010` after the assignment.

If a line contains more than one implicit conversion, such as the expression assigned to `c` in the following example, only one warning message is issued.

```
reg signed [3:0] a;
reg signed [3:0] b;
reg signed [7:0] c;

c = a+4'b0101+(b*3'b101);
```

In this example, `a` and `b` are converted to unsigned values, and because the whole right side is unsigned, assigning the right-side value to `c` also results in the warning.

The code in [Example 3-4](#) generates eight VER-318 warnings shown in [Example 3-5](#).

**Example 3-4 Modules m1 Through m9**

```

1 module m1 (a, z);
2   input signed [0:3] a;
3   output signed [0:4] z;
4   assign z = a;
5 endmodule
6
7
8 module m2 (a, z);
9   input signed [0:2] a;
10  output [0:4] z;
11  assign z = a + 3'sb111;
12 endmodule
13
14
15 module m3 (a, z);
16   input [0:3] a;
17   output z;
18   reg signed [0:3] x;
19   reg z;
20   always begin
21     x = a;
22     z = x < 4'sd5; /* note that x is signed and compared to 4'sd5,
which is also signed, but the result of the comparison is put into z, an
unsigned reg. This appears to be a sign mismatch; however, no VER-318
warning is issued for this line because comparison results are always
considered unsigned. This is true for all relational operators. */
23   end
24 endmodule
25
26
27 module m4 (in1, in2, out);
28   input signed [7:0] in1, in2;
29   output signed [7:0] out;
30   assign out = in1 * in2;
31 endmodule
32
33
34 module m5 (a, b, z);
35   input [1:0] a, b;
36   output [2:0] z;
37   wire signed [1:0] x = a;
38   wire signed [1:0] y = b;
39   assign z = x - y;
40 endmodule
41
42
43 module m6 (a, z);
44   input [3:0] a;
45   output z;
46   reg signed [3:0] x;
47   wire z;

```

```

48  always @(a) begin
49      x = a;
50  end
51  assign z = x < -4'sd5;
52endmodule
53
54module m7 (in1, in2, lt, in1_lt_64);
55    input  signed [7:0] in1, in2;           // two signed inputs
56    output lt, in1_lt_64;
57    assign lt  = in1 < in2;                 // comparison is signed
58
59    // using a signed constant results in a signed comparison
60
61    assign in1_lt_64 = in1 < 8'sd64;
62endmodule
63
64
65module m8 (in1, in2, lt);
66
67// in1 is signed but in2 is unsigned
68
69    input signed [7:0] in1;
70    input          [7:0] in2;
71    output lt;
72    wire uns_lt, uns_in1_lt_64;
73
74/* comparison is unsigned because of the sign mismatch; in1 is
signed but in2 is unsigned */
75
76    assign uns_lt = in1 < in2;
77
78/* Unsigned constant causes unsigned comparison; so negative values
of in1 would compare as larger than 8'd64 */
79
80    assign uns_in1_lt_64 = in1 < 8'd64;
81    assign lt = uns_lt + uns_in1_lt_64;
82
83endmodule
84
85
86
87module m9 (in1, in2, lt);
88    input signed [7:0] in1;
89    input          [7:0] in2;
90    output lt;
91    assign lt = in1 < $signed ({1'b0, in2});
92endmodule
93
94

```

The eight VER-318 warnings generated by the code in [Example 3-4](#) are shown in [Example 3-5](#).

**Example 3-5 Sign Conversion Warnings for m1 Through m9**

```

Warning: /usr/00budgeting/vhdl-mr/warn-sign.v:11: signed to unsigned
assignment occurs. (VER-318)
Warning: /usr/00budgeting/vhdl-mr/warn-sign.v:21: unsigned to signed
assignment occurs. (VER-318)
Warning: /usr/00budgeting/vhdl-mr/warn-sign.v:37: unsigned to signed
assignment occurs. (VER-318)
Warning: /usr/00budgeting/vhdl-mr/warn-sign.v:38: unsigned to signed
assignment occurs. (VER-318)
Warning: /usr/00budgeting/vhdl-mr/warn-sign.v:39: signed to unsigned
assignment occurs. (VER-318)
Warning: /usr/00budgeting/vhdl-mr/warn-sign.v:49: unsigned to signed
assignment occurs. (VER-318)
Warning: /usr/00budgeting/vhdl-mr/warn-sign.v:76: signed to unsigned
conversion occurs. (VER-318)
Warning: /usr/00budgeting/vhdl-mr/warn-sign.v:80: signed to unsigned
conversion occurs. (VER-318)
HDL compilation completed successfully.
Current design is now '/usr/00budgeting/vhdl-mr/ml.db:ml'
ml m2 m3 m4 m5 m6 m7 m8 m9

```

[Table](#) describes what caused the warnings listed in [Example 3-5](#).

Module	Cause of warning
m1, m4, and m7	These modules do not have any sign conversion warnings because the signs are consistently applied.
m9	This module does not generate a VER-318 warning because, even though in1 and in2 are sign mismatched, the casting operator is used to force the sign on in2. When a casting operator is used, no warning is returned when sign conversion occurs.
m2	In this module, a is signed and added to 3'sb111, which is signed and has a value of -1. However, z is not signed, so the value of the expression on the right, which is signed, will be converted to unsigned when assigned to z. The VER-318 warning "signed to unsigned assignment occurs" is issued.
m3	In this module, a is unsigned but put into the signed reg x. Here a will be converted to signed, and a VER-318 warning "unsigned to signed assignment occurs" is issued. Note that in line 22 ( $z = x < 4'sd5$ ) x is signed and compared to 4'sd5, which is also signed, but the result of the comparison is put into z, an unsigned reg. This appears to be a sign mismatch; however, no VER-318 warning is issued for this line because comparison results are always considered unsigned. This is true for all relational operators.

Module	Cause of warning
m5	In this module, a and b are unsigned but they are assigned to x and y, which are signed. Two VER-318 warnings “unsigned to signed assignment occurs” are issued. In addition, y is subtracted from x and assigned to z, which is unsigned. Here the VER-318 warning “signed to unsigned assignment occurs” is also issued.
m6	In this module, a is unsigned but put into the signed register x. The VER-318 warning “unsigned to signed assignment occurs” is issued.
m8	In this module, in1 is signed and compared with in2, which is unsigned, and 8'd64, which is an unsigned value.  For each expression, the VER-318 warning “signed to unsigned conversion occurs” is issued.

## Multiplexing Logic

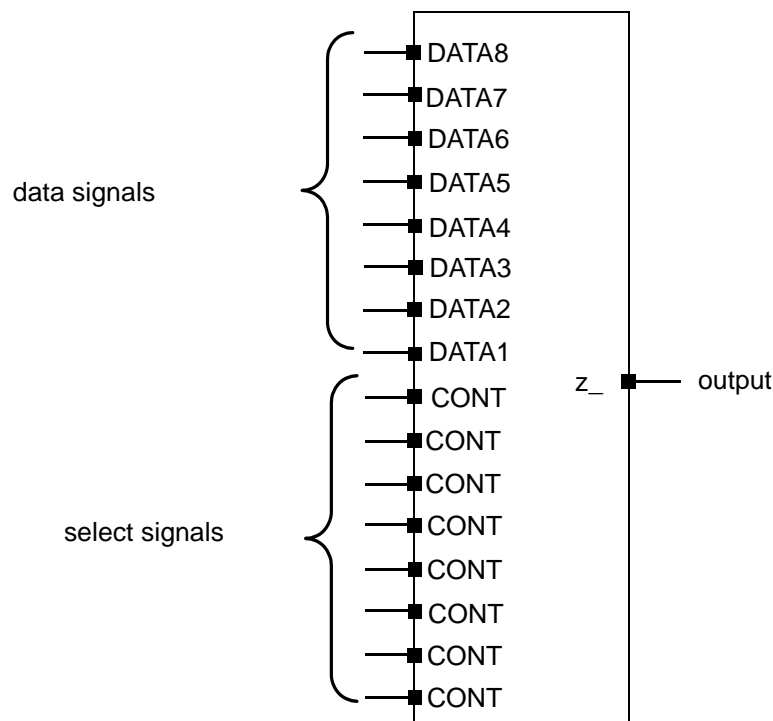
Multiplexers are commonly modeled with case statements. If statements are occasionally used and are usually more difficult to code. To implement multiplexing logic, HDL Compiler uses SELECT\_OP cells which Design Compiler maps to combinational logic or multiplexers in the logic library. If you want Design Compiler to preferentially map multiplexing logic to multiplexers—or multiplexer trees—in your logic library, you must infer MUX\_OP cells.

The following sections describe multiplexer inference:

- [SELECT\\_OP Inference](#)
- [One-Hot Multiplexer Inference](#)
- [MUX\\_OP Inference](#)
- [Variables That Control MUX\\_OP Inference](#)
- [MUX\\_OP Inference Limitations](#)

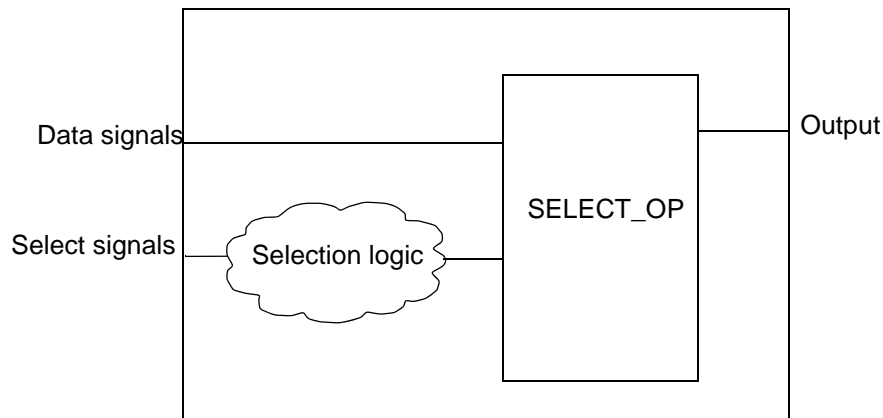
### SELECT\_OP Inference

By default, HDL Compiler uses SELECT\_OP components to implement conditional operations implied by if and case statements. An example of a SELECT\_OP cell implementation for an 8-bit data signal is shown in [Figure 3-6](#).

*Figure 3-6 SELECT\_OP Implementation for an 8-bit Data Signal*

For an 8-bit data signal, 8 selection bits are needed.  
This is called a one-hot implementation.

SELECT\_OPs behave like one-hot multiplexers; the control lines are mutually exclusive, and each control input allows the data on the corresponding data input to pass to the output of the cell. To determine which data signal is chosen, HDL Compiler generates selection logic, as shown in [Figure 3-7](#).

*Figure 3-7 HDL Compiler Output—SELECT\_OP and Selection Logic*

Depending on the design constraints, Design Compiler implements the SELECT\_OP with either combinational logic or multiplexer cells from the logic library.

---

## One-Hot Multiplexer Inference

As mentioned in the previous section, Design Compiler implements SELECT\_OPs with either combinational logic or multiplexer cells from the logic library. You can force Design Compiler to map the SELECT\_OP cell to a one-hot multiplexer in the logic library by using the `infer_onehot_mux` directive and the coding style shown in [Example 3-6](#) or [Example 3-7](#).

### Example 3-6 One-Hot Multiplexer Coding Style One

```

case (1'b1) //synopsys full_case parallel_case infer_onehot_mux
sel1 : out = in1;
sel2 : out = in2;
sel3 : out = in3;

```

### Example 3-7 One-Hot Multiplexer Coding Style Two

```

case({sel3, sel2, sel1}) //synopsys full_case parallel_case
infer_onehot_mux
3'b001: out = in1;
3'b010: out = in2;
3'b100: out = in3;
default: out = 1'b0;
endcase

```

Note that the `parallel_case` and `full_case` directives are required.

For optimization details and library requirements, see the *Design Compiler User Guide*.

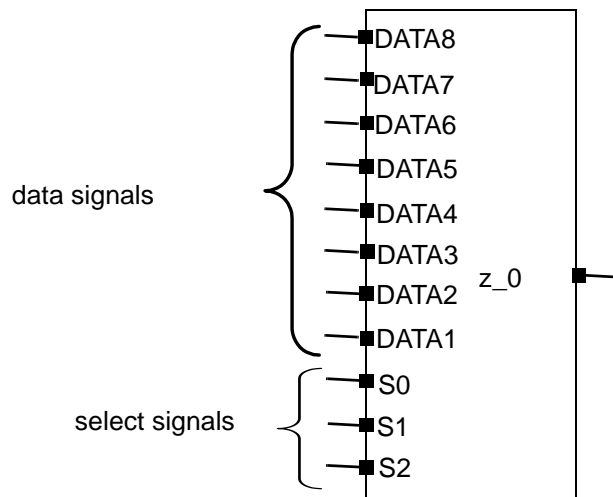


## MUX\_OP Inference

If you want Design Compiler to preferentially map multiplexing logic in your RTL to multiplexers—or multiplexer trees—in your logic library, you need to infer MUX\_OP cells. These cells are hierarchical generic cells optimized to use the minimum number of select signals. They are typically faster than the SELECT\_OP cell, which uses a one-hot implementation. Although MUX\_OP cells improve design speed, they also might increase area. During optimization, Design Compiler preferentially maps MUX\_OP cells to multiplexers—or multiplexer trees—from the logic library, unless the area costs are prohibitive, in which case combinational logic is used. For information about how Design Compiler maps MUX\_OP cells to multiplexers in the target logic library, see the *Design Compiler Reference Manual: Optimization and Timing Analysis*.

[Figure 3-8](#) shows a MUX\_OP cell for an 8-bit data signal. Notice that the MUX\_OP cell needs only three control lines to select an output; compare this with the SELECT\_OP cell, which needed eight control lines.

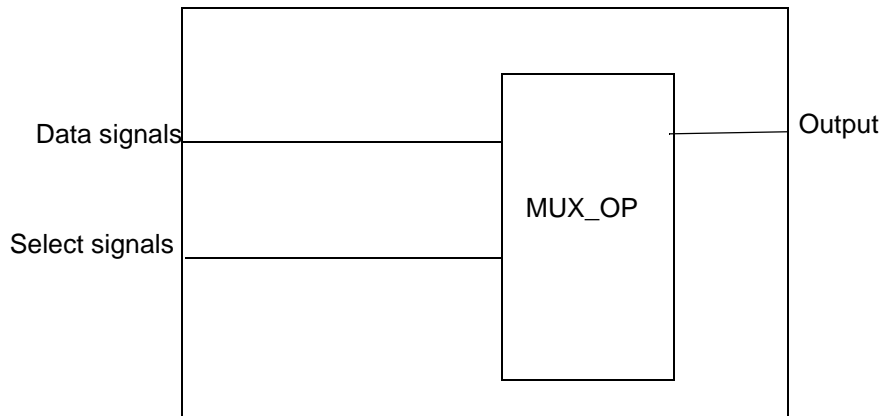
Figure 3-8 MUX\_OP Generic Cell for an 8-bit Data Signal



For an 8-bit word, only 3 selection bits are needed.

The MUX\_OP cell contains internal selection logic to determine which data signal is chosen; HDL Compiler does not need to generate any selection logic, as shown in [Figure 3-9](#).

Figure 3-9 HDL Compiler Output—MUX\_OP Generic Cell for 8-Bit Data



Use the following methods to infer MUX\_OP cells:

- To infer MUX\_OP cells for a specific case or if statement, use the `infer_mux` directive. Additionally, you must use a simple variable as the control expression; for example, you can use the input “A” but not the negation of input “A”. If statements have special coding considerations, for details [“Considerations When Using if Statements to Code For MUX\\_OPs” on page 3-23](#).

```
always@(SEL) begin
case (SEL) // synopsys infer_mux
  2'b00: DOUT <= DIN[0];
  2'b01: DOUT <= DIN[1];
  2'b10: DOUT <= DIN[2];
  2'b11: DOUT <= DIN[3];
endcase
```

Note that the case statement must be parallel; otherwise, a MUX\_OP is not inferred and an error is reported. The `parallel_case` directive does not make a case statement truly parallel. This directive can also be set on a block to direct HDL Compiler to infer MUX\_OPs for all case statements in that block. Use the following syntax:

```
// synopsys infer_mux block_label_list
```

- To infer MUX\_OP cells for all case and if statements, use the `hdl_infer_mux` variable. Additionally, your coding style must use a simple variable as the control expression; for example, you can use the input “A” but not the negation of input “A”.

By default, if you set the `infer_mux` directive on a case statement that has two or more synthetic (DesignWare) operators as data inputs, HDL Compiler generates an ELAB-370 warning and does not infer a MUX\_OP because you would lose the benefit of resource sharing.

For detailed information about MUX\_OP components, see the *Design Compiler Reference Manual: Optimization and Timing Analysis*.

## Variables That Control MUX\_OP Inference

The variables that control MUX\_OP cell inference are listed in [Table 3-2](#).

Table 3-2 MUX\_OP Inference Variables

Variable	Description
<code>hdlin_infer_mux</code>	<p>This variable controls MUX_OP inference for all designs you input in the same Design Compiler session.</p> <p>Options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>default</code>—Infers MUX_OPs for case and if statements in processes that have the <code>infer_mux</code> directive or attribute attached.</li> <li><code>none</code>—Does not infer MUX_OPs, regardless of the directives set in the VHDL description. HDL Compiler generates a warning if <code>hdlin_infer_mux = none</code> and <code>infer_mux</code> are used in the RTL.</li> <li><code>all</code>—Infers MUX_OPs for every case and if statement in your design for which one can be used. This can negatively affect the quality of results, because it might be more efficient to implement the MUX_OPs as random logic instead of using a specialized multiplexer structure.</li> </ul>
<code>hdlin_mux_size_limit</code>	<p>This variable sets the maximum size of a MUX_OP that the HDL Compiler tool can infer. The default is 32. If you set this variable to a value greater than 32, the tool might take an unusually long elaboration time.</p> <p>If the number of branches in a case statement exceeds the maximum size specified by this variable, the tool generates the following warning message:</p> <p>Warning: A mux was not inferred because case statement %s has a very large branching factor. (HDL-383)</p>
<code>hdlin_mux_size_min</code>	<p>Sets the minimum number of data inputs for a MUX_OP inference. The default is 2.</p>
<code>hdlin_mux_oversize_ratio</code>	<p>Defined as the ratio of the number of MUX_OP inputs to the unique number of data inputs. When this ratio is exceeded, a MUX_OP will not be inferred and the circuit will be generated with SELECT_OPs. The default is 100.</p>

Table 3-2 MUX\_OP Inference Variables (Continued)

Variable	Description
<code>hdlin_mux_size_only</code>	<p>To ensure that MUX_OP cells are mapped to MUX technology cells, you must apply a <code>size_only</code> attribute to the cells to prevent logic decomposition in later optimization steps. You can set the <code>size_only</code> attribute on each MUX_OP manually or allow the tool to set it automatically. The automatic behavior can be controlled by the <code>hdlin_mux_size_only</code> variable.</p> <p>Options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0—Specifies that no cells receive the <code>size_only</code> attribute.</li> <li>• 1—Specifies that MUX_OP cells that are generated with the RTL <code>infer_mux</code> compiler directive and that are on set/reset signals receive the <code>size_only</code> attribute. This is the default setting.</li> <li>• 2—Specifies that all MUX_OP cells that are generated with the RTL <code>infer_mux</code> compiler directive receive the <code>size_only</code> attribute.</li> <li>• 3—Specifies that all MUX_OP cells on set/reset signals receive the <code>size_only</code> attribute: for example, MUX_OP cells that are generated by setting the <code>hdlin_infer_mux</code> variable to <code>all</code>.</li> <li>• 4—Specifies that all MUX_OP cells receive the <code>size_only</code> attribute: for example, MUX_OP cells that are generated by the <code>hdlin_infer_mux</code> variable set to <code>all</code>.</li> </ul> <p>By default, the <code>hdlin_mux_size_only</code> variable is set to 1, meaning that MUX_OP cells that are generated with the RTL <code>infer_mux</code> compiler directive and that are on set/reset signals receive the <code>size_only</code> attribute.</p>

## MUX\_OP Inference Examples

In [Example 3-8](#), two MUX\_OPs and one SELECT\_OP are inferred, as follows:

- For the first always block, the `infer_mux` directive is set on the case statement, which causes HDL Compiler to infer a MUX\_OP.
- For the second always block, there are two case statements.
  - For the first case statement, a SELECT\_OP is inferred. This is the default inference.
  - However, the second case statement has the `infer_mux` directive set on it, which causes HDL Compiler to infer the MUX\_OP cell.

### Example 3-8 Two MUX\_OPs and One SELECT\_OP Inferred

```
module test_muxop_selectop (DIN1, DIN2, DIN3, SEL1, SEL2,
  SEL3, DOUT1,DOUT2, DOUT3); input [7:0] DIN1, DIN2; input
  [3:0] DIN3; input [2:0] SEL1, SEL2; input [1:0] SEL3;
```

```

output DOUT1, DOUT2, DOUT3;

reg DOUT1, DOUT2, DOUT3;

always @ (SEL1 or DIN1)
begin
    case (SEL1) //synopsys infer_mux
        3'b000: DOUT1 <= DIN1[0];
        3'b001: DOUT1 <= DIN1[1];
        3'b010: DOUT1 <= DIN1[2];
        3'b011: DOUT1 <= DIN1[3];
        3'b100: DOUT1 <= DIN1[4];
        3'b101: DOUT1 <= DIN1[5];
        3'b110: DOUT1 <= DIN1[6];
        3'b111: DOUT1 <= DIN1[7];

    endcase
end

always @ (SEL2 or SEL3 or DIN2 or DIN3)
begin
    case (SEL2)
        3'b000: DOUT2 <= DIN2[0];
        3'b001: DOUT2 <= DIN2[1];
        3'b010: DOUT2 <= DIN2[2];
        3'b011: DOUT2 <= DIN2[3];
        3'b100: DOUT2 <= DIN2[4];
        3'b101: DOUT2 <= DIN2[5];
        3'b110: DOUT2 <= DIN2[6];
        3'b111: DOUT2 <= DIN2[7];

    endcase

    case (SEL3) //synopsys infer_mux
        2'b00: DOUT3 <= DIN3[0];
        2'b01: DOUT3 <= DIN3[1];
        2'b10: DOUT3 <= DIN3[2];
        2'b11: DOUT3 <= DIN3[3];

    endcase
end

endmodule

```

[Example 3-9](#) shows the MUX\_OP inference report for the code in [Example 3-8](#). [Figure 3-10 on page 3-20](#) shows a representation of the HDL Compiler implementation. The tool displays inference reports by default. If you do not want these reports displayed, you can turn them off using the `hdlin_reporting_level` variable. For more information about the `hdlin_reporting_level` variable, see [“Customizing Elaboration Reports” on page 1-8](#).

**Example 3-9 MUX\_OP Inference Report**

Statistics for case statements in always block at line 31 in file ...

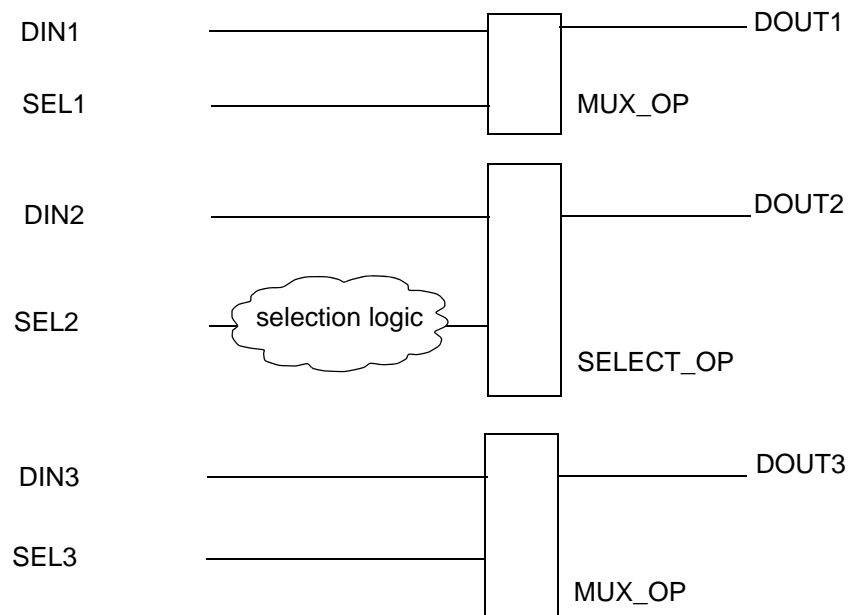
Line	full/ parallel
33	auto/auto

Statistics for MUX\_OPs

block name/line	Inputs	Outputs	# sel inputs	MB
test_muxop_selectop/13	8	1	3	N
test_muxop_selectop/47	4	1	2	N

The first column of the MUX\_OP report indicates the block that contains the case statement for which the MUX\_OP is inferred. The line number of the case statement in Verilog also appears in this column. The remaining columns indicate the number of inputs, outputs, and select lines on the inferred MUX\_OP.

**Figure 3-10 HDL Compiler Implementation**



**Example 3-10** uses the `infer_mux` directive for a specific block.

**Example 3-10 MUX\_OP Inference for a Block**

```
module muxtwo(DIN1, DIN2, SEL1, SEL2, DOUT1, DOUT2);
  input [7:0] DIN1;
  input [3:0] DIN2;
```

```
    input [2:0] SEL1;
    input [1:0] SEL2;
    output DOUT1, DOUT2;
    reg DOUT1, DOUT2;

//synopsys infer_mux "blk1"

always @(SEL1 or SEL2 or DIN1 or DIN2)
begin: blk1
    // this case statement infers an 8-to-1 MUX_OP
    case (SEL1)
        3'b000: DOUT1 <= DIN1[0];
        3'b001: DOUT1 <= DIN1[1];
        3'b010: DOUT1 <= DIN1[2];
        3'b011: DOUT1 <= DIN1[3];
        3'b100: DOUT1 <= DIN1[4];
        3'b101: DOUT1 <= DIN1[5];
        3'b110: DOUT1 <= DIN1[6];
        3'b111: DOUT1 <= DIN1[7];
    endcase

    // this case statement infers a 4-to-1 MUX_OP
    case (SEL2)
        2'b00: DOUT2 <= DIN2[0];
        2'b01: DOUT2 <= DIN2[1];
        2'b10: DOUT2 <= DIN2[2];
        2'b11: DOUT2 <= DIN2[3];
    endcase
end
endmodule
```

[Example 3-11](#) uses the `infer_mux` directive for a specific case statement. This case statement contains eight unique values, and HDL Compiler infers an 8-to-1 MUX\_OP.

**Example 3-11 MUX\_OP Inference for a Specific case Statement**

```

module mux8to1 (DIN, SEL, DOUT);
  input [7:0] DIN;
  input [2:0] SEL;
  output DOUT;
  reg DOUT;
  always@(SEL or DIN)
  begin: blk1
    case (SEL) // synopsys infer_mux
      3'b000: DOUT <= DIN[0];
      3'b001: DOUT <= DIN[1];
      3'b010: DOUT <= DIN[2];
      3'b011: DOUT <= DIN[3];
      3'b100: DOUT <= DIN[4];
      3'b101: DOUT <= DIN[5];
      3'b110: DOUT <= DIN[6];
      3'b111: DOUT <= DIN[7];
    endcase
  end
endmodule

```

In [Example 3-12](#) a MUX\_OP is inferred by using an if-else statement. This coding style requires the control expression to be a simple variable. If statements have special coding considerations, for details see [“Considerations When Using if Statements to Code For MUX\\_OPs” on page 3-23](#).

**Example 3-12 MUX\_OP Inference Using if-else Statement**

```

module test ( input sel,a,b, output reg dout);
  always @(*)
  if(sel) //synopsys infer_mux
    dout = a;
  else
    dout = b;
endmodule

```

In [Example 3-13](#) a MUX\_OP is inferred by using a “?:” operator. This coding style requires you to place the `infer_mux` directive just after “?” construct.

**Example 3-13 MUX\_OP Inference for a Specific case Statement**

```

module test (sig, A, B, C);
  input A, B, C;
  output sig;
  assign sig = A ? /* synopsys infer_mux */ B :C ;
endmodule

```



## Considerations When Using if Statements to Code For MUX\_OPs

In general, good coding practice is to use case statements when coding multiplexing logic because the if statement coding style can result in potentially slower, larger designs and reduce coding flexibility. These issues are described in this section.

In order for HDL Compiler to infer MUX\_OPs through if-else statements, you must use very simple expressions, such as those shown in [Example 3-14](#). From this code, the tool can infer a 4-to-1 MUX\_OP cell.

### Example 3-14 Tool Infers MUX\_OP From If-Else Statements

```
module mux4l (a, b, c, d, sel, dout);
  input  a, b, c, d;
  input [1:0] sel;
  output reg dout;

  always@(*) begin
    if (sel == 2'b00) /* synopsys infer_mux */
      begin
        dout <= a;
      end
    else if (sel == 2'b01) begin
      dout <= b;
    end
    else if (sel == 2'b10) begin
      dout <= c;
    end
    else if (sel == 2'b11) begin
      dout <= d;
    end
  end

end
```

endmodule

In [Example 3-14](#), the code specifies all possible conditions and the tool builds the most efficient logic, a 4-to-1 MUX\_OP cell. However, when your if statements don't cover all possible conditions, as in [Example 3-15](#), the tool does not infer optimum logic. Instead, it infers a 4-to-1 multiplexer even though there are only two branches. In this case, the optimum logic is a 2-to-1 MUX\_OP cell, but the tool builds a 4-to-1 MUX\_OP.

### Example 3-15 Tool Infers Inefficient 4:1 MUX\_OP From if-else Statements

```
module mux2l (a, b, sel, dout);
  input  a, b;
  input [1:0] sel;
  output reg dout;

  always@(*) begin
    if (sel == 2'b00) /* synopsys infer_mux */
      begin
```

```

        dout <= a;
    end
    else begin
        dout <= b;
    end
end
endmodule

```

To infer a 2-to-1 MUX\_OP cell, you must recode the design in [Example 3-15](#) to the style shown in [Example 3-16](#).

**Example 3-16 Tool Infers 2:1 MUX\_OP From if-else Statements**

```

module mux2l (a, b, sel, dout);
    input  a, b;
    input [1:0] sel;
    output reg dout;

    reg tmp;

    always@(*) begin
        tmp = (sel == 2'b11) ? 1'b1 : 1'b0;
        if (tmp) /* synopsys infer_mux */
        begin
            dout <= a;
        end
        else begin
            dout <= b;
        end
    end
endmodule

```

Another difficulty with using if statements is limited coding flexibility. Expressions like the one used in [Example 3-17](#) are too complex for HDL Compiler to handle. In [Example 3-17](#), HDL Compiler does not infer a MUX\_OP cell even when the `infer_mux` directive is used. Instead, the tool infers a SELECT\_OP to build the multiplexing logic. In order to infer a 2-to-1 MUX\_OP cell, you must recode to extract the expression of the if statement and assign it to a variable so that the behavior is like a case statement.

**Example 3-17 Tool Cannot Infer MUX\_OP From Complex Expressions**

```

module mux2l (a, b, c, d, sel, dout);
    input a, b, c, d;
    input [1:0] sel;
    output reg dout;

    always@(*) begin
        if (sel[0] == 1'b0) /* synopsys infer_mux */
        begin
            dout <= a & b;
        end
    end
endmodule

```

```

        else begin
            dout <= d & c;
        end
    end
endmodule

```

To further illustrate the expression coding requirements, consider [Example 3-18](#). From the code in [Example 3-18](#), the tool infers a SELECT\_OP even though the `infer_mux` directive is used. To enable the tool to infer a MUX\_OP cell, you must recode the design in [Example 3-18](#) to the style shown in [Example 3-19](#).

**Example 3-18 Tool Infers SELECT\_OP for Multiplexing Logic From Complex Expressions**

```

module mux4l (a, b, c, d, dout);
    input  a, b, c, d;
    output reg dout;

    always@(*) begin
        if (a == 1'b0 && b == 1'b0) /* synopsys infer_mux */
            begin
                dout <= c & d;
            end
        else if (a == 1'b0 && b == 1'b1) begin
            dout <= c | d;
        end
        else if (a == 1'b1 && b == 1'b0) begin
            dout <= !c & d;
        end
        else if (a == 1'b1 && b == 1'b1) begin
            dout <= c | !d;
        end
    end
endmodule

```

**Example 3-19 Tool Infers MUX\_OP for Multiplexing Logic**

```

module mux4l (a, b, c, d, dout);
    input  a, b, c, d;
    output reg dout;
    reg [1:0] tmp;

    always@(*) begin
        tmp = {a, b};
        if (tmp == 2'b00) /* synopsys infer_mux */
            begin
                dout <= c & d;
            end
        else if (tmp == 2'b01) begin
            dout <= c | d;
        end
        else if (tmp == 2'b10) begin
            dout <= !c & d;
        end
    end
endmodule

```

```
    else if (tmp == 2'b11) begin
        dout <= c | !d;
    end
end
endmodule
```

A good practice, whenever possible, is to use case statements instead of if-else statements when you want to infer MUX\_OP cells.

---

## MUX\_OP Inference Limitations

The HDL Compiler tool does not infer MUX\_OP cells for

- case statements in while loops
- case or if statements that use complex control expressions

You must use a simple variable as the control expression. For example, you can use input A, but not the negation of input A.

MUX\_OP cells are inferred for incompletely specified case statements, such as case statements that

- Contain an if statement that covers more than one value
- Have a missing case statement branch or a missing assignment in a case statement branch
- Contain don't care values (x or "-")

In these cases, the logic might not be optimum, because other optimizations are disabled when you infer MUX\_OP cells under these conditions. For example, HDL Compiler optimizes default branches. If the `infer_mux` attribute is on the case statement, this optimization is not done.

When inferring a MUX\_OP for an incompletely specified case statement, the HDL Compiler tool issues the following ELAB-304 warning:

```
Warning: Case statement has an infer_mux attribute and a
default branch or incomplete mapping. This can cause
nonoptimal logic if a mux is inferred. (ELAB-304)
```

---

## MUX\_OP Components With Variable Indexing

The tool generates MUX\_OP components to implement indexing into a data variable, using a variable address. For example,

```

module E(data, addr, out);
  input [7:0] data;
  input [2:0] addr;
  output out;
  assign out = data[addr];
endmodule

```

In this example, a MUX\_OP is used to implement data[addr] because the subscript, addr, is not a known constant.

---

## Modeling Complex MUX Inferences: Bit and Memory Accesses

In addition to inferring multiplexers from case statements, you can infer them for bit or memory accesses. See [Example 3-20](#) through [Example 3-21](#) for templates. By default, the tool uses a MUX\_OP for bit and memory access.

### *Example 3-20 MUX Inference for Bit Access*

```

module mux_infer_bit (x, a, y);
  input [15:0] x;
  input [3:0] a;
  output y;
  reg y;
  always @(x,a)
  begin
    y = x[a];
  end
endmodule

```

### *Example 3-21 MUX Inference for Memory Access*

```

module mux_infer_memory (rw, addr, data);
  input rw;
  input [3:0] addr;
  inout [15:0] data;
  reg [3:0] x [15:0];
  assign data = (rw) ? x[addr] : 16'hz ;

  always @(rw, data)
    if (!rw) x[addr] = data ;
endmodule

```

---

## Bit-Truncation Coding for DC Ultra Datapath Extraction

Datapath design is commonly used in applications that contain extensive data manipulation, such as 3-D, multimedia, and digital signal processing (DSP). Datapath extraction transforms arithmetic operators into datapath blocks to be implemented by a datapath generator.

The DC Ultra tool enables datapath extraction after timing-driven resource sharing and explores various datapath and resource-sharing options during compile.

**Note:**

This feature is not available in DC Expert. See the Design Compiler documentation for datapath optimization details.

As of release 2002.05, DC Ultra datapath optimization supports datapath extraction of expressions containing truncated operands unless both of the following two conditions exist:

- The operands have upper bits truncated. For example, if *d* is 16-bits wide, *d*[7:0] truncates the upper eight bits.
- The width of the resulting expression is greater than the width of the truncated operand. For example, in the following statement, if *e* is 9-bits wide, the width of *e* is greater than the width of the truncated operand *d*[7:0]:

```
assign e = c + d[7:0];
```

Note that both conditions must be true to prevent extraction. For lower-bit truncations, the datapath is extracted in all cases.

Bit truncation can be either explicit or implicit. The following table describes both types of truncation.

Truncation type	Description
Explicit bit truncation	<p>An explicit upper-bit truncation occurs when you specify the bit range for truncation.</p> <p>The following code indicates explicit upper-bit truncation of operand A:</p> <pre>wire [i : 0] A; out = A [j : 0]; // where j &lt; i</pre>
Implicit bit truncation	<p>An implicit upper-bit truncation is one that occurs through assignment. Unlike with explicit upper-bit truncation, here you do not explicitly define the range for truncation.</p> <p>The following code indicates implicit upper-bit truncation of operand Y:</p> <pre>input [7 : 0] A,B; wire [14:0] Y = A * B;</pre> <p>Because A and B are each 8 bits wide, their product will be 16 bits wide. However, Y, which is only 15 bits wide, is assigned to be the 16-bit product, when the most significant bit (MSB) of the product is implicitly truncated. In this example, the MSB is the carryout bit.</p>

To see how bit truncation affects datapath extraction, consider the code in [Example 3-22](#).

**Example 3-22** *Design test1: Truncated Operand Is Extracted*

```
module test1 (a,b,c,e);
  input [7:0] a,b,c;
  output [7:0] e;
  wire [14:0] d;
  assign d = a * b; // <--- implicit upper-bit truncation
  assign e = c + d; // width of e is less than d
endmodule
```

In [Example 3-22](#), the upper bits of the  $a * b$  operation are implicitly truncated when assigned to d, and the width of e is less than the width of d. This code meets the first condition on [page 28](#) but does not meet the second. Because both conditions must be met to prevent extraction, this code is extracted.

Consider the code in [Example 3-23](#). Here bit truncation prevents extraction.

**Example 3-23 Design test2: Truncated Operand Is Not Extracted**

```

module test2 (a,b,c,e);
  input [7:0] a,b,c;
  output [8:0] e; // <--- e is 9-bits wide
  wire [7:0] d;   // <--- d is 8-bits wide
  assign d = a * b; // <---implicit upper-bit truncation
  assign e = c + d; // <---width of e is greater than d
endmodule

```

In [Example 3-23](#), the upper bits of the  $a * b$  operation are implicitly truncated when assigned to  $d$ , and the width of  $e$  is greater than the width of  $d$ . This code meets both the first and second conditions; the code is not extracted.

Consider the code in [Example 3-24](#). Here bit truncation prevents extraction.

**Example 3-24 Design test3: Truncated Operand Is Not Extracted**

```

module test3 (a,b,c,e);
  input [7:0] a,b,c;
  output [8:0] e;
  wire [15:0] d; // <--- d is 16-bits wide
  assign d = a * b; // <--- d is not truncated
  assign e = c + d[7:0]; // <--- explicit upper-bit truncation of d
                        // width of e is greater than d[7:0]
endmodule

```

In [Example 3-24](#), the upper bits of  $d$  are explicitly truncated, and the width of  $e$  is greater than the width of  $d$ . This code meets both the first and second conditions; the code is not extracted.

Consider the code in [Example 3-25](#). Here bit truncation does not prevent extraction.

**Example 3-25 Design test4: Truncated Operand Is Extracted**

```

module test4 (a,b,c,e);
  input [7:0] a,b,c;
  output [9:0] e;
  wire [15:0] d;
  assign d = a * b; // <--- No implicit upper-bit truncation
  assign e = c + d[15:8]; // <---"explicit lower" bit truncation of d
endmodule

```

In [Example 3-25](#), the lower bits of  $d$  are explicitly truncated. For expressions involving lower-bit truncations, the truncated operands are extracted regardless of the bit-widths of the truncated operands and of the expression result; this code is extracted.



## Latches in Combinational Logic

Sometimes your Verilog source can imply combinational feedback paths or latches in synthesized logic. This happens when a signal or a variable in a combinational logic block (an always block without a posedge or negedge clock statement) is not fully specified. A variable or signal is fully specified when it is assigned under all possible conditions.

When a variable is not assigned a value for all paths through an always block, the variable is conditionally assigned and a latch is inferred for the variable to store its previous value. To avoid these latches, make sure that the variable is fully assigned in all paths. In [Example 3-26](#), the variable Q is not assigned if GATE equals 1'b0. Therefore, it is conditionally assigned and HDL Compiler creates a latch to hold its previous value.

### *Example 3-26 Latch Inference Using an if Statement*

```
always @ (DATA or GATE) begin
    if (GATE) begin
        Q = DATA;
    end
end
```

[Example 3-27](#) and [Example 3-28](#) show Q fully assigned—Q is assigned 0 when GATE equals 1'b0. Note that [Example 3-27](#) and [Example 3-28](#) are not equivalent to [Example 3-26](#), in which Q holds its previous value when GATE equals 1'b0.

### *Example 3-27 Avoiding Latch Inference—Method 1*

```
always @ (DATA, GATE) begin
    Q = 0;
    if (GATE)
        Q = DATA;
end
```

### *Example 3-28 Avoiding Latch Inference—Method 2*

```
always @ (DATA, GATE) begin
    if (GATE)
        Q = DATA;
    else
        Q = 0;
end
```

The code in [Example 3-29](#) results in a latch because the variable is not fully assigned. To avoid the latch inference, add the following statement before the endcase statement:

```
default: decimal= 10'b000000000000;
```

**Example 3-29 Latch Inference Using a case Statement**

```
always @(I) begin
  case(I)
    4'h0: decimal= 10'b00000000001;
    4'h1: decimal= 10'b00000000010;
    4'h2: decimal= 10'b00000000100;
    4'h3: decimal= 10'b00000001000;
    4'h4: decimal= 10'b00000010000;
    4'h5: decimal= 10'b00000100000;
    4'h6: decimal= 10'b00001000000;
    4'h7: decimal= 10'b00010000000;
    4'h8: decimal= 10'b01000000000;
    4'h9: decimal= 10'b10000000000;
  endcase
end
```

Latches are also synthesized whenever a for loop statement does not assign a variable for all possible executions of the for loop and when a variable assigned inside the for loop is not assigned a value before entering the enclosing for loop.

# 4

## Modeling Sequential Logic

---

This chapter describes latch and flip-flop inference in the following sections:

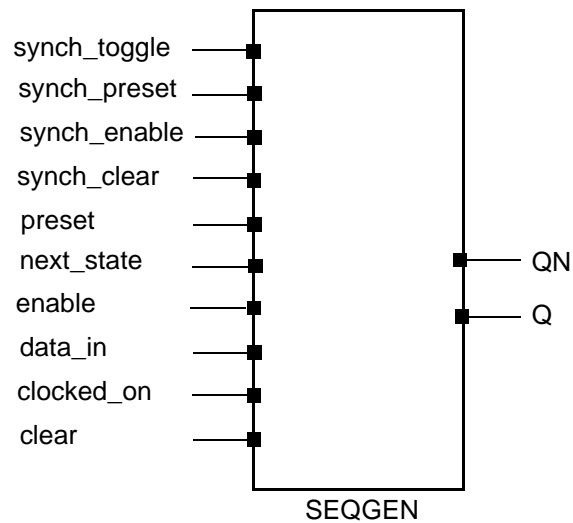
- [Generic Sequential Cells \(SEQGENs\)](#)
- [Inference Reports for Registers](#)
- [Register Inference Guidelines](#)
- [Register Inference Examples](#)

Synopsys uses the term register to refer to a 1-bit memory device, either a latch or a flip-flop. A latch is a level-sensitive memory device. A flip-flop is an edge-triggered memory device.

## Generic Sequential Cells (SEQGENs)

When HDL Compiler reads a design, it uses a generic sequential cell (SEQGEN), as shown in [Figure 4-1](#), to represent an inferred flip-flop or latch.

*Figure 4-1 SEQGEN Cell and Pin Assignments*



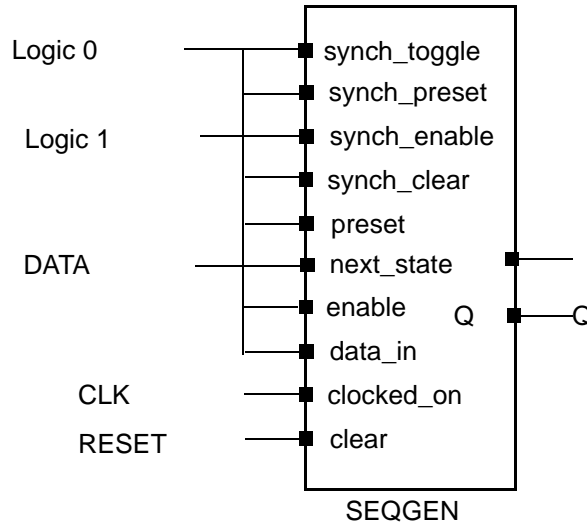
To illustrate how HDL Compiler uses SEQGENs to implement a flip-flop, consider [Example 4-1](#). This code infers a D flip-flop with an asynchronous reset.

*Example 4-1 D Flip-Flop With Asynchronous Reset*

```
module dff_async_set (DATA, CLK, RESET, Q);
  input DATA, CLK, RESET;
  output Q;
  reg Q;
  always @(posedge CLK or negedge RESET)
    if (~RESET)
      Q <= 1'b1;
    else
      Q <= DATA;
endmodule
```

Figure 4-2 shows the SEQGEN implementation.

Figure 4-2 SEQGEN Implementation



Example 4-2 shows the `report_cell` output. Here you see that the HDL Compiler has mapped the inferred flip-flop, `Q_reg` cell, to a SEQGEN.

Example 4-2 `report_cell` Output

```
*****
Report : cell
Design : dff_async_set
Version: V-2003.12
Date   : Wed Sep 15 11:17:48 2004
*****
```

```
Attributes:
  b - black box (unknown)
  h - hierarchical
  n - noncombinational
  r - removable
  u - contains unmapped logic
```

Cell	Reference	Library	Area	Attributes
I_0	GTECH_NOT	gtech	0.000000	u
Q_reg	**SEQGEN**		0.000000	n, u
Total 2 cells			0.000000	
1				

[Example 4-3](#) shows the GTECH netlist.

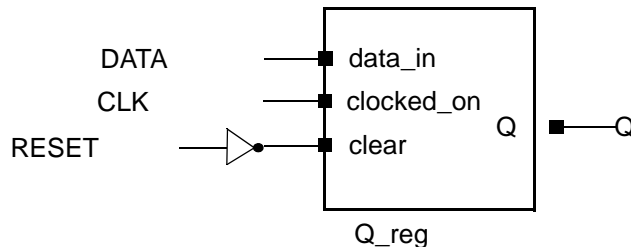
**Example 4-3 GTECH Netlist**

```
module dff_async_set ( DATA, CLK, RESET, Q );
  input DATA;
  input CLK;
  input RESET;
  output Q;
  wire  \*Logic1* , \*Logic0* , N0;

  \**SEQGEN**  Q_reg ( .clear(1'b0), .preset(N0), .next_state(DATA),
    .clocked_on(CLK), .data_in(1'b0), .enable(1'b0), .Q(Q),
    .synch_clear(
      1'b0), .synch_preset(1'b0), .synch_toggle(1'b0),
    .synch_enable(1'b1)
    );
  GTECH_NOT I_0 ( .A(RESET), .Z(N0) );
endmodule
```

After Design Compiler compiles the design, the SEQGEN is mapped to the appropriate flip-flop in the logic library. [Figure 4-3](#) shows an example of an implementation after compile.

**Figure 4-3 Design Compiler Implementation**



**Note:**

If the logic library does not contain the inferred flip-flop or latch, Design Compiler creates combinational logic for the missing function, if possible. For example, if you infer a D flip-flop with a synchronous set but your target library does not contain this type of flip-flop, Design Compiler creates combinational logic for the synchronous set function. Design Compiler cannot create logic to duplicate an asynchronous preset/reset. Your library must contain the sequential cell with the asynchronous control pins. See [“Register Inference Limitations”](#) on page 4-12.

## Inference Reports for Registers

HDL Compiler provides inference reports that describe each inferred flip-flop or latch. You can enable or disable the generation of inference reports by using the `hdlin_reporting_level` variable. By default, `hdlin_reporting_level` is set to `basic`.

When `hdlin_reporting_level` is set to `basic` or `comprehensive`, HDL Compiler generates a report similar to [Example 4-4](#). This basic inference report shows only which type of register was inferred.

**Example 4-4 Inference Report for a D Flip-Flop With Asynchronous Reset**

```
=====
| Register Name | Type | Width | Bus | MB | AR | AS | SR | SS | ST |
=====
| Q_reg        | Flip-flop | 1 | N | N | Y | N | N | N | N |
=====
```

In the report, the columns are abbreviated as follows:

- MB represents multibit cell
- AR represents asynchronous reset
- AS represents asynchronous set
- SR represents synchronous reset
- SS represents synchronous set
- ST represents synchronous toggle

A “Y” in a column indicates that the respective control pin was inferred for the register; an “N” indicates that the respective control pin was not inferred for the register. For a D flip-flop with an asynchronous reset, there should be a “Y” in the AR column. The report also indicates the type of register inferred, latch or flip-flop, and the name of the inferred cell.

When the `hdlin_reporting_level` variable is set to `verbose`, the report indicates how each pin of the SEQGEN cell is assigned, along with which type of register was inferred. [Example 4-5](#) shows a verbose inference report.

**Example 4-5 Verbose Inference Report for a D Flip-Flop With Asynchronous Reset**

```
=====
| Register Name | Type | Width | Bus | MB | AR | AS | SR | SS | ST |
=====
| Q_reg        | Flip-flop | 1 | N | N | Y | N | N | N | N |
=====
```

```
Sequential Cell (Q_reg)
  Cell Type: Flip-Flop
  Multibit Attribute: N
  Clock: CLK
  Async Clear: RESET
  Async Set: 0
  Async Load: 0
  Sync Clear: 0
  Sync Set: 0
  Sync Toggle: 0
  Sync Load: 1
```

If you do not want inference reports, set `hdlin_reporting_level` to `none`. For more information about the `hdlin_reporting_level` variable, see [“Reporting Elaboration Errors” on page 1-9](#).

---

## Register Inference Guidelines

When inferring registers, restrict each `always` block so that it infers a single type of memory element and check the inference report to verify that HDL Compiler inferred the correct device.

Register inference guidelines are described in the following sections:

- [Multiple Events in an `always` Block](#)
- [Minimizing Registers](#)
- [Keeping Unloaded Registers](#)
- [Preventing Unwanted Latches: `hdlin\_check\_no\_latch`](#)
- [Register Inference Limitations](#)

---

### Multiple Events in an `always` Block

HDL Compiler supports multiple events in a single `always` block, as shown in [Example 4-6](#).

*Example 4-6 Multiple Events in a Single `always` Block*

```
module test (  
    input [7:0]data,  
    input clk,  
    output reg [7:0]sum  
);  
always  
begin  
    @ (posedge clk)  
        sum <= data;  
    @ (posedge clk)  
        sum <= sum + data;  
    @ (posedge clk)  
        sum <= sum + data;  
end  
endmodule
```



## Minimizing Registers

An always block that contains a clock edge in the sensitivity list causes HDL Compiler to infer a flip-flop for each variable assigned a value in that always block. It might not be necessary to infer as flip-flops all variables in the always block. Make sure your HDL description builds only as many flip-flops as the design requires.

[Example 4-7](#) infers six flip-flops: three to hold the values of count and one each to hold and\_bits, or\_bits, and xor\_bits. However, the values of the outputs and\_bits, or\_bits, and xor\_bits depend solely on the value of count. Because count is registered, there is no reason to register the three outputs.

### Example 4-7 Inefficient Circuit Description With Six Inferred Registers

```
module count (
    input clock, reset,
    output reg and_bits, or_bits, xor_bits
);
reg [2:0] count;

always @(posedge clock) begin
    if (reset)
        count <= 0;
    else
        count <= count + 1;
        and_bits <= & count;
        or_bits <= | count;
        xor_bits <= ^ count;
    end
endmodule
```

[Example 4-8](#) shows the inference report which contains the six inferred flip-flops.

### Example 4-8 Inference Report

Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
or_bits_reg	Flip-flop	1	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
count_reg	Flip-flop	3	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N
xor_bits_reg	Flip-flop	1	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
and_bits_reg	Flip-flop	1	N	N	N	N	N	N	N

To avoid inferring extra registers, you can assign the outputs from within an asynchronous always block. [Example 4-9](#) shows the same function described with two always blocks, one synchronous and one asynchronous, that separate registered or sequential logic from combinational logic. This technique is useful for describing finite state machines. Signal assignments in the synchronous always block are registered, but signal assignments in the asynchronous always block are not. The code in [Example 4-9](#) creates a more area-efficient design.

**Example 4-9 Circuit With Three Inferred Registers**

```

module count (
    input clock, reset,
    output reg and_bits, or_bits, xor_bits
);
reg [2:0] count;

always @(posedge clock)
begin //synchronous block
    if (reset)
        count <= 0;
    else
        count <= count + 1;
end

always @(count)
begin //asynchronous block
    and_bits = & count;
    or_bits  = | count;
    xor_bits = ^ count;
end
endmodule

```

[Example 4-10](#) shows the inference report, which contains three inferred flip-flops.

**Example 4-10 Inference Report**

```

=====
| Register Name | Type | Width | Bus | MB | AR | AS | SR | SS | ST |
=====
| count_reg    | Flip-flop | 3 | Y | N | N | N | N | N | N |
=====

```

---

## Keeping Unloaded Registers

HDL Compiler does not automatically keep unloaded or undriven flip-flops or latches in a design. These cells are determined to be unnecessary and are removed during optimization. You can use the `hdlin_preserve_sequential` variable to control which cells to preserve:

- To preserve unloaded/undriven flip-flops and latches in your GTECH netlist, set `hdlin_preserve_sequential` to `all`.
- To preserve all unloaded flip-flops only, set `hdlin_preserve_sequential` to `ff`.
- To preserve all unloaded latches only, set `hdlin_preserve_sequential` to `latch`.
- To preserve all unloaded sequential cells, including unloaded sequential cells that are used solely as loop variables, set `hdlin_preserve_sequential` to `all+loop_variables`.

- To preserve flip-flop cells only, including unloaded sequential cells that are used solely as loop variables, set `hdlin_preserve_sequential` to `ff+loop_variables`.
- To preserve unloaded latch cells only, including unloaded sequential cells that are used solely as loop variables, set `hdlin_preserve_sequential` to `latch+loop_variables`.

If you want to preserve specific registers, use the `preserve_sequential` directive as shown in [Example 4-11](#) and [Example 4-12](#).

Important:

To preserve unloaded cells through compile, you must set `compile_delete_unloaded_sequential_cells` to `false`. Otherwise, Design Compiler removes them during optimization.

[Example 4-11](#) uses the `preserve_sequential` directive to save the unloaded cell, `sum2`, and the combinational logic preceding it; note that the combinational logic after it is not saved. If you also want to save the combinational logic after `sum2`, you need to recode design `mydesign` as shown in [Example 4-12 on page 4-10](#).

*Example 4-11 Retains an Unloaded Cell (sum2) and Two Adders*

```
module mydesign (in1, in2, in3, out, clk);
    input clk,
    input [0:1] in1, in2, in3,
    output [0:3] out
);
reg sum1, sum2 /* synopsys preserve_sequential */;
wire [0:4] save;
always @ (posedge clk)
begin
    sum1 <= in1 + in2;
    sum2 <= in1 + in2 + in3; // this combinational logic is saved
end
assign out = ~sum1;
assign save = sum1 + sum2; // this combinational logic is not saved
                        // because it is after the saved reg, sum2
endmodule
```

[Example 4-12](#) preserves all combinational logic before `reg save`.

**Example 4-12 Retains an Unloaded Cell (save) and Three Adders**

```

module mydesign (
    input clk,
    input [0:1] in1, in2, in3,
    output [0:3] out
);
reg sum1, sum2, save /* synopsys preserve_sequential */;
always @ (posedge clk)
begin
    sum1 <= in1 + in2;
    sum2 <= in1 + in2 + in3; // this combinational logic is saved
end
assign out = ~sum1;
always @ (posedge clk)
begin
    save <= sum1 + sum2; // this combinational logic is saved
end
endmodule

```

The `preserve_sequential` directive and the `hdlin_preserve_sequential` variable enable you to preserve cells that are inferred but optimized away by HDL Compiler. If a cell is never inferred, the `preserve_sequential` directive and the `hdlin_preserve_sequential` variable have no effect because there is no inferred cell to act on. In [Example 4-13](#), `sum2` is not inferred, so `preserve_sequential` does not save `sum2`.

**Example 4-13 `preserve_sequential` Has No Effect on Cells Not Inferred**

```

module mydesign (
    input clk,
    input [0:1] in1, in2,
    output [0:3] out
);
reg sum1, sum2 /* synopsys preserve_sequential */;
wire [0:4] save;
always @ (posedge clk)
begin
    sum1 <= in1 + in2;
end
assign out = ~sum1;
assign save = sum2; // Although the preserve_sequential directive is on
                    // sum2, it is not saved due to sum2 is not inferred
endmodule

```

**Note:**

By default, the `hdlin_preserve_sequential` variable does not preserve variables used in for loops as unloaded registers. To preserve such variables, you must set `hdlin_preserve_sequential` to `ff+loop_variables`.

In addition to preserving sequential cells with the `hdlin_preserve_sequential` variable and the `preserve_sequential` directive, you can also use the `hdlin_keep_signal_name`

variable and the `keep_signal_name` directive. For more information, see [Keeping Signal Names](#).

**Note:**

The tool does not distinguish between unloaded cells (those not connected to any output ports) and feedthroughs. See [Example 4-14](#) for a feedthrough.

**Example 4-14**

```
module test (
    input clk,
    input in,
    output reg out
);
reg tmp1;
always@(posedge clk)
begin : storage
    tmp1 = in;
    out = tmp1;
end
endmodule
```

With `hdlin_preserve_sequential` set to `ff` and `compile_delete_unloaded_sequential_cells` set to `false`, the tool builds two registers; one for the feedthrough cell (temp1) and the other for the loaded cell (temp2) as shown in the following memory inference report:

**Example 4-15 Feedthrough Register temp1**

Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
tmp1_reg	Flip-flop	1	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
out_reg	Flip-flop	1	N	N	N	N	N	N	N

For details about the `hdlin_preserve_sequential` variable, see the man page.

## Preventing Unwanted Latches: `hdlin_check_no_latch`

HDL Compiler infers latches when you do not fully specify a signal or a variable in a combinational logic block. (See [“Latches in Combinational Logic” on page 3-31](#).) If you want the tool to issue a warning when it creates a latch, set `hdlin_check_no_latch` to `true`. The default is `false`. Consider the declarations in [Example 4-16](#):

**Example 4-16**

```
reg [1:0] Current_State;
reg [1:0] Next_State;

parameter STATE0 = 00, STATE1 = 01, STATE2 = 10, STATE3 = 11;
```

These declarations are used in state machine coding in [Example 4-17](#).

#### Example 4-17

```
always @(Current_State)
begin
  case (Current_State)
    STATE0: begin
      Next_State = STATE1;
      Data_Out   = 2'b00;
    end
    STATE1: begin
      Next_State = STATE2;
      Data_Out   = 2'b01;
    end
    STATE2: begin
      Next_State = STATE3;
      Data_Out   = 2'b10;
    end
    STATE3: begin
      Next_State = STATE0;
      Data_Out   = 2'b11;
    end
  endcase
end
```

If you accidentally omit the base and bit-width, so 10 is viewed as ten and 11 as eleven, HDL Compiler generates latches instead of combinational logic. When the `hdlin_check_no_latch` variable is set to true, HDL Compiler generates a warning alerting you to the unwanted latches. This warning is the last statement HDL Compiler reports after reading in the design.

---

## Register Inference Limitations

Note the following limitations when inferring registers:

- The tool does not support more than one independent if-block when asynchronous behavior is modeled within an always block. If the always block is purely synchronous, multiple independent if-blocks are supported by the tool.
- HDL Compiler cannot infer flip-flops and latches with three-state outputs. You must instantiate these components in your Verilog description.
- HDL Compiler cannot infer flip-flops with bidirectional pins. You must instantiate these components in your Verilog description.
- HDL Compiler cannot infer flip-flops with multiple clock inputs. You must instantiate these components in your Verilog description.

- HDL Compiler cannot infer multiport latches. You must instantiate these components in your Verilog description.
- HDL Compiler cannot infer register banks (register files). You must instantiate these components in your Verilog description.
- Although you can instantiate flip-flops with bidirectional pins, Design Compiler interprets these cells as black boxes.
- If you use an if statement to infer D flip-flops, the if statement must occur at the top level of the always block.

The following example is invalid because the if statement does not occur at the top level:

```
always @(posedge clk or posedge reset) begin
    temp = reset;
    if (reset)
        ...
end
```

HDL Compiler generates the following message when the if statement does not occur at the top level:

```
Error: The statements in this 'always' block are outside the
scope of the synthesis policy (%s). Only an 'if' statement
is allowed at the top level in this 'always' block. (ELAB-302)
```

---

## Register Inference Examples

The following sections describe register inference examples:

- [Inferring Latches](#)
- [Inferring Flip-Flops](#)

---

### Inferring Latches

HDL Compiler synthesizes latches when variables are conditionally assigned. A variable is conditionally assigned if there is a path that does not explicitly assign a value to that variable.

HDL Compiler can infer D and SR latches. The following sections describe their inference:

- [Basic D Latch](#)
- [D Latch With Asynchronous Set: Use async\\_set\\_reset](#)
- [D Latch With Asynchronous Reset: Use async\\_set\\_reset](#)

- [D Latch With Asynchronous Set and Reset: Use `hdlin\_latch\_always\_async\_set\_reset`](#)

## Basic D Latch

When you infer a D latch, make sure you can control the gate and data signals from the top-level design ports or through combinational logic. Controllable gate and data signals ensure that simulation can initialize the design. [Example 4-18](#) shows a D latch.

*Example 4-18 D Latch Code*

```
module d_latch (
    input GATE, DATA,
    output reg Q
);
always @(GATE or DATA)
if (GATE)
    Q <= DATA;
endmodule
```

HDL Compiler generates the inference report shown in [Example 4-19](#).

*Example 4-19 Inference Report*

Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
Q_reg	Latch	1	N	N	N	N	-	-	-

## D Latch With Asynchronous Set: Use `async_set_reset`

[Example 4-20](#) shows the recommended coding style for an asynchronously set latch using the `async_set_reset` directive.

*Example 4-20 D Latch With Asynchronous Set: Uses `async_set_reset`*

```
module d_latch_async_set (
    input GATE, DATA, SET,
    output reg Q
);

// synopsys async_set_reset "SET"
always @(GATE or DATA or SET)
if (~SET)
    Q = 1'b1;
else if (GATE)
    Q = DATA;
endmodule
```

The tool generates the inference report shown in [Example 4-21](#).



**Example 4-21 Inference Report for D Latch With Asynchronous Set**

Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
Q_reg	Latch	1	N	N	N	Y	-	-	-

**D Latch With Asynchronous Reset: Use `async_set_reset`**

[Example 4-22](#) shows the recommended coding style for an asynchronously reset latch using the `async_set_reset` directive.

**Example 4-22 D Latch With Asynchronous Reset: Uses `async_set_reset`**

```

module d_latch_async_reset (
    input RESET, GATE, DATA,
    output reg Q
);
//synopsys async_set_reset "RESET"
always @ (RESET or GATE or DATA)
    if (~RESET) Q <= 1'b0;
    else if (GATE) Q <= DATA;
endmodule

```

The tool generates the inference report shown in [Example 4-23](#).

**Example 4-23 Inference Report for D Latch With Asynchronous Reset**

Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
Q_reg	Latch	1	N	N	Y	N	-	-	-

**D Latch With Asynchronous Set and Reset: Use `hdlin_latch_always_async_set_reset`**

To infer a D latch with an active-low asynchronous set and reset, set the `hdlin_latch_always_async_set_reset` variable to true and use the coding style shown in [Example 4-24](#).

**Note:**

This example uses the `one_cold` directive to prevent priority encoding of the set and reset signals. Although this saves area, it might cause a simulation/synthesis mismatch if both signals are low at the same time.

**Example 4-24 D Latch With Asynchronous Set and Reset: Uses *hdlin\_latch\_always\_async\_set\_reset***

```
// Set hdlin_latch_always_async_set_reset to true.
module d_latch_async (
    input GATE, DATA, RESET, SET,
    output reg Q
);
// synopsys one_cold "RESET, SET"
always @ (GATE or DATA or RESET or SET)
begin : infer
    if (!SET) Q <= 1'b1;
    else if (!RESET) Q <= 1'b0;
    else if (GATE) Q <= DATA;
end
endmodule
```

[Example 4-25](#) shows the inference report.

**Example 4-25 Inference Report D Latch With Asynchronous Set and Reset**

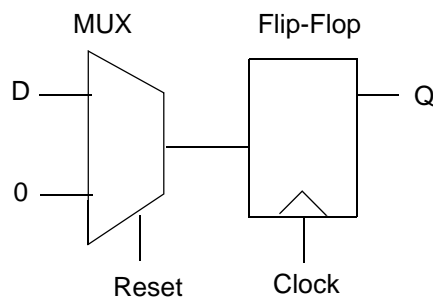
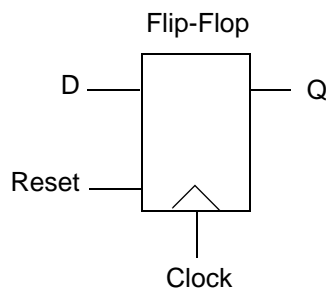
Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
Q_reg	Latch	1	N	N	Y	Y	-	-	-

## Inferring Flip-Flops

Synthesis of sequential elements, such as various types of flip-flops, often involves signals that set or reset the sequential device. Synthesis tools can create a sequential cell that has built-in set and reset functionality. This is referred to as set/reset inference. For an example using a flip-flop with reset functionality, consider the following RTL code:

```
module m (
    input clk, set, reset, d,
    output reg q
);
always @ (posedge clk)
    if (reset) q <= 1'b0;
    else      q <= d;
endmodule
```

There are two ways to synthesize an electrical circuit with a reset signal based on the previous code. You can either synthesize the circuit with a simple flip-flop with external combinational logic to represent the reset functionality, as shown in [Figure 4-4](#), or you can synthesize a flip-flop with built-in reset functionality, as shown in [Figure 4-5](#).

*Figure 4-4 Flip-Flop with External Combinational Logic to Represent Reset**Figure 4-5 Flip-Flop With Built-In Reset Functionality*

The intended implementation is not apparent from the RTL code. You should specify HDL Compiler synthesis directives or Design Compiler variables to guide the tool to create the proper synchronous set and reset signals.

The following sections provide examples of these flip-flop types:

- [Basic D Flip-Flop](#)
- [D Flip-Flop With Asynchronous Reset Using ?: Construct](#)
- [D Flip-Flop With Asynchronous Reset](#)
- [D Flip-Flop With Asynchronous Set and Reset](#)
- [D Flip-Flop With Synchronous Set: Use sync\\_set\\_reset](#)
- [D Flip-Flop With Synchronous Reset: Use sync\\_set\\_reset](#)
- [D Flip-Flop With Synchronous and Asynchronous Load](#)
- [D Flip-Flops With Complex Set/Reset Signals](#)
- [Multiple Flip-Flops With Asynchronous and Synchronous Controls](#)
- [JK Flip-Flop With Synchronous Set and Reset Using sync\\_set\\_reset](#)

## Basic D Flip-Flop

When you infer a D flip-flop, make sure you can control the clock and data signals from the top-level design ports or through combinational logic. Controllable clock and data signals ensure that simulation can initialize the design. If you cannot control the clock and data signals, infer a D flip-flop with an asynchronous reset or set or with a synchronous reset or set.

[Example 4-26](#) infers a basic D flip-flop.

### Example 4-26 Basic D Flip-Flop

```
module dff_pos (DATA, CLK, Q);
  input DATA, CLK;
  output Q;
  reg Q;
  always @(posedge CLK)
    Q <= DATA;
endmodule
```

HDL Compiler generates the inference report shown in [Example 4-27](#).

### Example 4-27 Inference Report

Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
Q_reg	Flip-flop	1	N	N	N	N	N	N	N

## D Flip-Flop With Asynchronous Reset Using ?: Construct

[Example 4-28](#) uses the ?: construct to infer a D flip-flop with an asynchronous reset. Note that the tool does not support more than one ?: operator inside an always block.

### Example 4-28 D Flip-Flop With Asynchronous Reset Using ?: Construct

```
module test(input clk, rst, din, output reg dout);
  always@(posedge clk or negedge rst)
    dout <= (!rst) ? 1'b0 : din;
endmodule
```

HDL Compiler generates the inference report shown in [Example 4-29](#).

### Example 4-29 D Flip-Flop With Asynchronous Reset Inference Report

Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
dout_reg	Flip-flop	1	N	N	Y	N	N	N	N

## D Flip-Flop With Asynchronous Reset

[Example 4-30](#) infers a D flip-flop with an asynchronous reset.

### Example 4-30 D Flip-Flop With Asynchronous Reset

```
module dff_async_reset (DATA, CLK, RESET, Q);
  input DATA, CLK, RESET;
  output Q;
  reg Q;
  always @(posedge CLK or posedge RESET)
    if (RESET)
      Q <= 1'b0;
    else
      Q <= DATA;
endmodule
```

HDL Compiler generates the inference report shown in [Example 4-31](#).

### Example 4-31 D Flip-Flop With Asynchronous Reset Inference Report

Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
Q_reg	Flip-flop	1	N	N	Y	N	N	N	N

## D Flip-Flop With Asynchronous Set and Reset

[Example 4-32](#) infers a D flip-flop with asynchronous set and reset pins. The example uses the `one_hot` directive to prevent priority encoding of the set and reset signals. If both SET and RESET are asserted at the same time, the synthesized hardware is unpredictable. To check for this condition, use the SYNTHESIS macro and the ``ifndef ... `endif` constructs as shown. See [“Predefined Macros” on page 1-20](#).

**Example 4-32 D Flip-Flop With Asynchronous Set and Reset**

```

module dff_async (RESET, SET, DATA, Q, CLK);
  input CLK;
  input RESET, SET, DATA;
  output Q;
  reg Q;
  // synopsys one_hot "RESET, SET"

  always @(posedge CLK or posedge RESET or posedge SET)
    if (RESET)
      Q <= 1'b0;
    else if (SET)
      Q <= 1'b1;
    else Q <= DATA;
  `ifndef SYNTHESIS
    always @ (RESET or SET)
      if (RESET + SET > 1)
        $write ("ONE-HOT violation for RESET and SET.");
  `endif
endmodule

```

[Example 4-33](#) shows the inference report.

**Example 4-33 D Flip-Flop With Asynchronous Set and Reset Inference Report**

Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
Q_reg	Flip-flop	1	N	N	Y	Y	N	N	N

## D Flip-Flop With Synchronous Set: Use `sync_set_reset`

This example shows a D flip-flop design with a synchronous set.

The `sync_set_reset` directive is applied to the SET signal. If the target library does not have a D flip-flop with synchronous set, the Design Compiler tool infers synchronous set logic as the input to the D pin of the flip-flop. If the set logic is not directly in front of the D pin of the flip-flop, initialization problems can occur during gate-level simulation of the design. The `sync_set_reset` directive ensures that this logic is as close to the D pin as possible.

### Design of a D Flip-Flop With Synchronous Set

```
module dff_sync_set (
    input DATA, CLK, SET;
    output reg Q
);
//synopsys sync_set_reset "SET"
always @(posedge CLK)
    if (SET) Q <= 1'b1;
    else Q <= DATA;
endmodule
```

### Inference Report

```
=====
=====
| Register Name | Type | Width | Bus | MB | AR | AS | SR | SS |
| ST |
=====
=====
| Q_reg | Flip-flop | 1 | N | N | N | N | N | Y |
| N |
=====
=====
```

### D Flip-Flop With Synchronous Reset: Use sync\_set\_reset

[Example 4-34](#) infers a D flip-flop with synchronous reset. The `sync_set_reset` directive is applied to the RESET signal.

#### Example 4-34 D Flip-Flop With Synchronous Reset: Use sync\_set\_reset

```
module dff_sync_reset (
    input DATA, CLK, RESET,
    output reg Q
);
//synopsys sync_set_reset "RESET"
always @(posedge CLK)
    if (~RESET)
        Q <= 1'b0;
    else
        Q <= DATA;
endmodule
```

HDL Compiler generates the inference report shown in [Example 4-35](#).

#### Example 4-35 D Flip-Flop With Synchronous Reset Inference Report

```
=====
| Register Name | Type | Width | Bus | MB | AR | AS | SR | SS | ST |
|=====
| Q_reg | Flip-flop | 1 | N | N | N | N | Y | N | N |
|=====
```

## D Flip-Flop With Synchronous and Asynchronous Load

Use the coding style in [Example 4-36](#) to infer a D flip-flop with both synchronous and asynchronous load signals.

### Example 4-36 Synchronous and Asynchronous Loads

```
module dff_a_s_load (ALOAD, SLOAD, ADATA, SDATA, CLK, Q);
  input ALOAD, ADATA, SLOAD, SDATA, CLK;
  output Q;
  reg Q;
  wire asyn_rst, asyn_set;

  assign asyn_rst = ALOAD && !ADATA;
  assign asyn_set = ALOAD && ADATA;

  //synopsys one_cold "ALOAD, ADATA"

  always @ (posedge CLK or posedge asyn_rst or posedge asyn_set)
  begin
    if (asyn_set)
      Q <= 1'b1;
    else if (asyn_rst)
      Q <= 1'b0;
    else if (SLOAD)
      Q <= SDATA;
  end
end
```

HDL Compiler generates the inference report shown in [Example 4-37](#).

### Example 4-37 D Flip-Flop With Synchronous and Asynchronous Load Inference Report

```
=====
| Register Name | Type | Width | Bus | MB | AR | AS | SR | SS | ST |
=====
| Q_reg        | Flip-flop | 1 | N | N | Y | Y | N | N | N |
=====
```

```
Sequential Cell (Q_reg)
  Cell Type: Flip-Flop
  Multibit Attribute: N
  Clock: CLK
  Async Clear: ADATA' ALOAD
  Async Set: ADATA ALOAD
  Async Load: 0
  Sync Clear: 0
  Sync Set: 0
  Sync Toggle: 0
  Sync Load: SLOAD
```



## D Flip-Flops With Complex Set/Reset Signals

While many set/reset signals are simple signals, some include complex logic. To enable HDL Compiler to generate a clean set/reset (that is, a set/reset signal attached only to the appropriate set/reset pins), use the following coding guidelines:

- Apply the appropriate set/reset compiler directive ( `//synopsys sync_set_reset` or `//synopsys async_set_reset`) to the set/reset signal.
- Use no more than two operands in the set/reset logic expression conditional.
- Use the set/reset signal as the first operand in the set/reset logic expression conditional.

This coding style supports usage of the negation operator on the set/reset signal and the logic expression. The logic expression can be a simple expression or any expression contained inside parentheses. However, any deviation from these coding guidelines is not supported. For example, using a more complex expression other than the OR of two expressions, or using a `rst` (or `~rst`) that does not appear as the first argument in the expression is not supported.

### Examples

```
//synopsys sync_set_reset "rst"
always @(posedge clk)
if (rst | logic_expression)
    q <= 0;
else ...
else ...
...

//synopsys sync_set_reset "rst"
assign a = rst | ~( a | b & c);
always @(posedge clk)
if (a)
    q <= 0;
else ...;
else ...;
...

//synopsys sync_set_reset "rst"
always @(posedge clk)
if ( ~ rst | ~ (a | b | c))
    q <= 0;
else ...
else ...
...

//synopsys sync_set_reset "rst"
assign a = ~ rst | ~ logic_expression;
always @(posedge clk)
if (a)
    q <= 0;
```

```

else ...;
else ...;
...

```

## Multiple Flip-Flops With Asynchronous and Synchronous Controls

In [Example 4-38](#), the `infer_sync` block uses the reset signal as a synchronous reset and the `infer_async` block uses the reset signal as an asynchronous reset.

**Example 4-38** *Multiple Flip-Flops With Asynchronous and Synchronous Controls*

```

module multi_attr (DATA1, DATA2, CLK, RESET, SLOAD, Q1, Q2);
  input DATA1, DATA2, CLK, RESET, SLOAD;
  output Q1, Q2;
  reg Q1, Q2;

  //synopsys sync_set_reset "RESET"
  always @(posedge CLK)
  begin : infer_sync
    if (~RESET)
      Q1 <= 1'b0;
    else if (SLOAD)
      Q1 <= DATA1; // note: else hold Q1
    end
  always @(posedge CLK or negedge RESET)
  begin: infer_async
    if (~RESET)
      Q2 <= 1'b0;
    else if (SLOAD)
      Q2 <= DATA2;
    end
  end
endmodule

```

[Example 4-39](#) shows the inference report.

**Example 4-39** *Inference Report*

```

=====
| Register Name | Type | Width | Bus | MB | AR | AS | SR | SS | ST |
=====
| Q1_reg        | Flip-flop | 1 | N | N | N | N | Y | N | N |
=====

=====
| Register Name | Type | Width | Bus | MB | AR | AS | SR | SS | ST |
=====
| Q2_reg        | Flip-flop | 1 | N | N | Y | N | N | N | N |
=====

```

## JK Flip-Flop With Synchronous Set and Reset Using `sync_set_reset`

For the tool to infer JK flip-flops properly, you should code the J, K, and clock signals at the top-level design ports so that simulation can initialize the design.

The following Verilog design infers the JK flip-flop described in [Table 4-1](#). The design uses the `sync_set_reset` directive to specify the J and K signals as the synchronous set and reset signals (the JK function) and the `one_hot` directive to prevent priority encoding of the J and K signals.

*Table 4-1 Truth Table for JK Flip-Flop*

J	K	CLK	Qn+1
0	0	Rising	Qn
0	1	Rising	0
1	0	Rising	1
1	1	Rising	QnB
X	X	Falling	Qn

### JK Flip-Flop Design

```
module JK (
    input J, K,
    input CLK,
    output reg Q
);
// synopsys sync_set_reset "J, K"
// synopsys one_hot "J, K"

always @ (posedge CLK)
case ({J, K})
    2'b01 : Q <= 0;
    2'b10 : Q <= 1;
    2'b11 : Q <= ~Q;
endcase
endmodule
```

### Inference Report

Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
Q_reg	Flip-flop	1	N	N	N	N	Y	Y	N



# 5

## Modeling Finite State Machines

---

HDL Compiler automatically infers finite state machines (FSMs). For FSM optimization details, see the *Design Compiler Reference Manual: Optimization and Timing Analysis*.

This chapter describes FSM inference in the following sections:

- [FSM Coding Requirements for Automatic Inference](#)
- [FSM Inference Variables](#)
- [FSM Coding Example](#)
- [FSM Inference Report](#)
- [Enumerated Types](#)

## FSM Coding Requirements for Automatic Inference

To enable HDL Compiler to automatically infer an FSM, follow the coding guidelines in [Table 5-1](#).

*Table 5-1 Code Requirements for FSM Inference*

Item	Description
Registers	<p>To infer a register as an FSM state register, the register</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Must never be assigned a value other than the defined state values.</li> <li>- Must always be inferred as a flip-flop (and not a latch).</li> <li>- Must never be a module port, function port, or task port. This would make the encoding visible to the outside.</li> </ul> <p>Inside expressions, FSM state registers can be used only as an operand of "==" or "!=" comparisons, or as the expression in a case statement (that is, "case (cur_state) ...") that is, an implicit comparison to the label expressions. FSM state registers are not allowed to occur in other expressions—this would make the encoding explicit.</p>
Function	There can be only one FSM design per module. State variables cannot drive a port. State variables cannot be indexed.
Ports	All ports of the initial design must be either input ports or output ports. Inout ports are not supported.
Combinational feedback loops	Combinational feedback loops are not supported although combinational logic that does not depend on the state vector is accurately represented.
Clocks	FSM designs can include only a single clock and an optional synchronous or asynchronous reset signal.

---

## FSM Inference Variables

Finite state machine inference variables are listed in [Table 5-2](#).

*Table 5-2 Variables Specific to FSM Inference*

---

Variable	Description
<code>hdlin_reporting_level</code>	Default is <code>basic</code> . Variable enables and disables FSM inference reports. When set to <code>comprehensive</code> , FSM inference reports are generated when HDL Compiler reads the code. By default, FSM inference reports are not generated. For more information, including valid values, see <a href="#">“Customizing Elaboration Reports” on page 1-8</a> .
<code>fsm_auto_inferring</code>	Default is <code>false</code> . Variable determines whether or not Design Compiler automatically extracts the FSM during compile. This option controls Design Compiler extraction. In order to automatically infer and extract an FSM, <code>fsm_auto_inferring</code> must be <code>true</code> . See the <i>Design Compiler Reference Manual: Optimization and Timing Analysis</i> for additional information.

---

For more information about these variables, see the man pages.

---

## FSM Coding Example

HDL Compiler infers an FSM for the design in [Example 5-1](#). [Figure 5-1](#) shows the state diagram for fsm1.

**Example 5-1 Finite State Machine fsm1**

```
module fsm1 (x, clk, rst, y);
    input x, clk, rst;
    output y;

    parameter [3:0]
        set0 = 4'b0001, hold0 = 4'b0010, set1 = 4'b0100, hold1 = 4'b1000;

    reg [3:0] current_state, next_state;

    always @ (posedge clk or posedge rst)
        if (rst)
            current_state <= set0;
        else
            current_state <= next_state;

    always @ (current_state or x)
        case (current_state)
            set0:
                next_state = hold0;
            hold0:
                if (x == 0)
                    next_state = hold0;
                else
                    next_state = set1;
            set1:
                next_state = hold1;
            hold1:
                next_state = set0;
            default :
                next_state = set0;
        endcase
    assign y = current_state == hold0 & x;
endmodule
```



Figure 5-1 State Diagram for fsm1

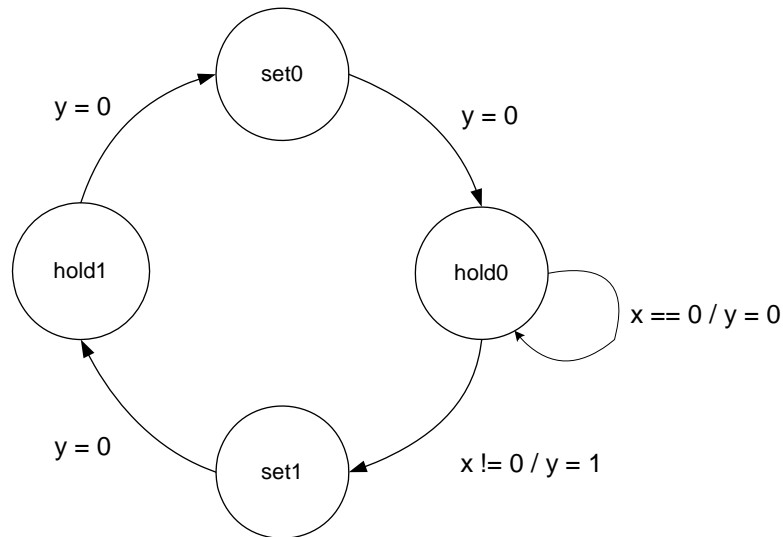


Table 5-3 shows the state table for fsm1.

Table 5-3 State Table for fsm1

Current state	Input (x)	Next state	Output (y)
0001 (set0)	0	0010 (hold0)	0
0001 (set0)	1	0010 (hold0)	0
0010 (hold0)	0	0010 (hold0)	0
0010 (hold0)	1	0100 (set1)	1
0100 (set1)	0	1000 (hold1)	0
0100 (set1)	1	1000 (hold1)	0
1000 (hold1)	0	0001 (set0)	0
1000 (hold1)	1	0001 (set0)	0

## FSM Inference Report

HDL Compiler creates a finite state machine inference report when you set `hdlin_reporting_level` to `comprehensive`. The default is `basic`, meaning that an FSM inference report is not generated. For more information about the `hdlin_reporting_level` variable, see [“Customizing Elaboration Reports” on page 1-8](#).

Consider the code in [Example 5-2](#).

### Example 5-2 FSM Code

```
module fsm (clk, rst, y);
  input clk, rst;
  output y;
  parameter [2:0]
    red = 3'b001, green = 3'b010, yellow = 3'b100;
  reg [2:0] current_state, next_state;

  always @ (posedge clk or posedge rst)
    if (rst)
      current_state <= red;
    else
      current_state <= next_state;

  always @(*)
    case (current_state)
      yellow:
        next_state = red;
      green:
        next_state = yellow;
      red:
        next_state = green;
      default:
        next_state = red;
    endcase
  assign y = current_state == yellow;
endmodule // fsm
```

[Example 5-3](#) shows the FSM inference report.

### Example 5-3 FSM Inference Report

```
statistics for FSM inference:
state register: current_state
states
=====
fsm_state_0:100
fsm_state_1:010
fsm_state_2:001
total number of states: 3
```

## Enumerated Types

HDL Compiler simplifies equality comparisons and detection of full cases in designs that contain enumerated types. A variable has an enumerated type when it can take on only a subset of the values it could possibly represent. For example, if a 2-bit variable can be set to 0, 1, or 2 but is never assigned to 3, then it has the enumerated type {0, 1, 2}. Enumerated types commonly occur in finite state machine state encodings. When the number of states needed is not a power of 2, certain state values can never occur. In finite state machines with one-hot encodings, many values can never be assigned to the state vector. For example, for a vector of length  $n$ , there are  $n$  one-hot values, so there are  $(2^n - n)$  values that will never be used.

HDL Compiler infers enumerated types automatically; user directives can be used in other situations. When all variable assignments are within a module, HDL Compiler usually detects if the variable has an enumerated type. If the variable is assigned a value that depends on an input port or if the design assigns individual bits of the variable separately, HDL Compiler requires the `/* synopsys enum */` directive in order to consider the variable as having an enumerated type.

When enumerated types are inferred, HDL Compiler generates a report similar to [Example 5-4](#).

*Example 5-4 Enumerated Type Report*

Symbol Name	Source	Type	# of values
current_state	auto	onehot	4

This report tells you the source of the enumerated type,

- user directive (user will be listed under Source)
- HDL Compiler inferred (auto will be listed under Source)

It also tells you the type of encoding—whether onehot or enumerated (`enum`). HDL Compiler recognizes a special case of enumerated types in which each possible value has a single bit set to 1 and all remaining bits set to zero. This special case allows additional optimization opportunities. An enumerated type that fits this pattern is described as onehot in the enumerated type report. All other enumerated types are described as `enum` in the report.

**Example 5-5** is a combination of both FSM and enumerated type optimization. The first case statement infers an FSM; the second case statement uses enumerated type optimization. These are two independent processes.

*Example 5-5 Design: my\_design*

```
module my_design (clk, rst, x, y);
    input clk, rst;
    input [5:0] x;
    output [5:0] y;

    parameter [5:0]
        zero = 6'b0000001, one = 6'b0000010, two = 6'b0000100, three = 6'b0001000, four
        = 6'b0010000, five = 6'b1000000;

    reg [5:0] tmp;
    reg [5:0] y;

    always @ (posedge clk or posedge rst)
        if (rst)
            tmp <= zero;
        else
            case (x)
                one      : tmp = zero;
                two      : tmp = one;
                three    : tmp = two;
                four     : tmp = three;
                five     : tmp = four;
                default  : tmp = five;
            endcase

    always @ (tmp)
        case (tmp)
            five      : y = 6'b100110;
            four      : y = 6'b010100;
            three     : y = 6'b001001;
            two       : y = 6'b010010;
            one       : y = 6'b111111;
            zero      : y = 6'b100100;
            default   : y = 6'b110101;
        endcase

endmodule
```

# 6

## Modeling Three-State Buffers

---

HDL Compiler infers a three-state driver when you assign the value z (high impedance) to a variable. HDL Compiler infers 1 three-state driver per variable per always block. You can assign high-impedance values to single-bit or bused variables. A three-state driver is represented as a TSGEN cell in the generic netlist. Three-state driver inference and instantiation are described in the following sections:

- [Using z Values](#)
- [Three-State Driver Inference Report](#)
- [Assigning a Single Three-State Driver to a Single Variable](#)
- [Assigning Multiple Three-State Drivers to a Single Variable](#)
- [Registering Three-State Driver Data](#)
- [Instantiating Three-State Drivers](#)
- [Errors and Warnings](#)

---

## Using z Values

You can use the z value in the following ways:

- Variable assignment
- Function call argument
- Return value

You can use the z value only in a comparison expression, such as in

```
if (IN_VAL == 1'bz) y=0;
```

This statement is permissible because `IN_VAL == 1'bz` is a comparison. However, it always evaluates to false, so it is also a simulation/synthesis mismatch. See [Unknowns and High Impedance in Comparisons](#).

This code,

```
OUT_VAL = (1'bz && IN_VAL);
```

is not a comparison expression. HDL Compiler generates an error for this expression.

---

## Three-State Driver Inference Report

The `hdlin_reporting_level` variable determines whether HDL Compiler generates a three-state inference report. If you do not want inference reports, set `hdlin_reporting_level` to `none`. The default is `basic`, meaning that a report will be generated. [Example 6-1](#) shows a three-state inference report:

*Example 6-1 Three-State Inference Report*

```
=====
| Register Name |           Type           | Width | MB |
=====
|   T_tri       | Tri-State Buffer         |    1  |  N  |
=====
```

The first column of the report indicates the name of the inferred three-state device. The second column indicates the type of inferred device. The third column indicates the width of the inferred device. The fourth column indicates whether the device is multibit. HDL Compiler generates the same report for the default and verbose reports for three-state inference. For more information about the `hdlin_reporting_level` variable, see [“Customizing Elaboration Reports” on page 1-8](#).

## Assigning a Single Three-State Driver to a Single Variable

[Example 6-2](#) infers a single three-state driver and shows the associated inference report.

### Example 6-2 Single Three-State Driver

```
module three_state (ENABLE, IN1, OUT1);
  input IN1, ENABLE;
  output OUT1;
  reg OUT1;
  always @(ENABLE or IN1) begin
    if (ENABLE)
      OUT1 = IN1;
    else
      OUT1 = 1'bz; //assigns high-impedance state
    end
  end
endmodule
```

#### Inference Report

Register Name	Type	Width	MB
OUT1_tri	Tri-State Buffer	1	N

[Example 6-3](#) infers a single three-state driver with MUXed inputs and shows the associated inference report.

### Example 6-3 Single Three-State Driver With MUXed Inputs

```
module three_state (A, B, SELA, SELB, T);
  input A, B, SELA, SELB;
  output T;
  reg T;
  always @(SELA or SELB or A or B) begin
    T = 1'bz;
    if (SELA)
      T = A;
    if (SELB)
      T = B;
    end
  end
endmodule
```

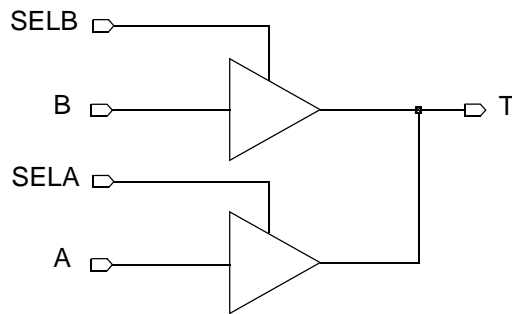
#### Inference Report

Register Name	Type	Width	MB
T_tri	Tri-State Buffer	1	N

## Assigning Multiple Three-State Drivers to a Single Variable

When assigning multiple three-state drivers to a single variable, as shown in [Figure 6-1](#), always use assign statements, as shown in [Example 6-4](#).

*Figure 6-1 Two Three-State Drivers Assigned to a Single Variable*



*Example 6-4 Correct Method*

```

module three_state (A, B, SELA, SELB, T);
  input A, B, SELA, SELB;
  output T;
  assign T = (SELA) ? A : 1'bz;
  assign T = (SELB) ? B : 1'bz;
endmodule

```

Do not use multiple always blocks (shown in [Example 6-5](#)). Multiple always blocks cause a simulation/synthesis mismatch because the reg data type is not resolved. Note that the tool does not display a warning for this mismatch.

*Example 6-5 Incorrect Method*

```

module three_state (A, B, SELA, SELB, T);
  input A, B, SELA, SELB;
  output T;
  reg T;
  always @(SELA or A)
    if (SELA)
      T = A;
    else
      T = 1'bz;
  always @(SELB or B)
    if (SELB)
      T = B;
    else
      T = 1'bz;
endmodule

```



## Registering Three-State Driver Data

When a variable is registered in the same block in which it is defined as a three-state driver, HDL Compiler also registers the driver's enable signal, as shown in [Example 6-6](#). [Figure 6-2](#) shows the compiled gates and the associated inference report.

### Example 6-6 Three-State Driver With Enable and Data Registered

```
module ff_3state (DATA, CLK, THREE_STATE, OUT1);
  input DATA, CLK, THREE_STATE;
  output OUT1;
  reg OUT1;
  always @ (posedge CLK) begin
    if (THREE_STATE)
      OUT1 <= 1'bz;
    else
      OUT1 <= DATA;
  end
endmodule
```

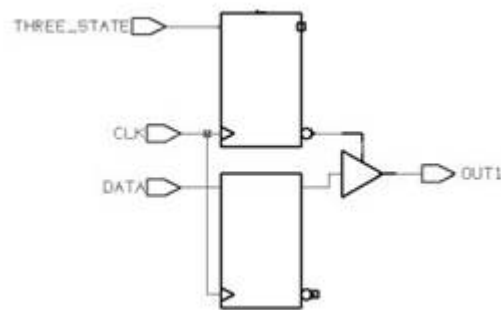
Inference reports:

This inference reports are as follows:

```
=====
====
|Register Name      |   Type   | Width | Bus | MB | AR | AS | SR | SS |
|ST |
=====
====
|OUT1_reg           |Flip-flop |   1   |  N  |  N |  N |  N |  N |  N |
| N |
|OUT1_tri_enable_reg|Flip-flop |   1   |  N  |  N |  N |  N |  N |  N |
| N |
=====
=====
```

```
=====
| Register Name |      Type      | Width | MB |
=====
|   OUT1_tri   | Tri-State Buffer |   1   |  N |
=====
```

Figure 6-2 Three-State Driver With Enable and Data Registered



## Instantiating Three-State Drivers

The following gate types are supported:

- bufif0 (active-low enable line)
- bufif1 (active-high enable line)
- notif0 (active-low enable line, output inverted)
- notif1 (active-high enable line, output inverted)

Connection lists for bufif and notif gates use positional notation. Specify the order of the terminals as follows:

- The first terminal connects to the output of the gate.
- The second terminal connects to the input of the gate.
- The third terminal connects to the control line.

[Example 6-7](#) shows a three-state gate instantiation with an active-high enable and no inverted output.

### Example 6-7 Three-State Gate Instantiation

```
module three_state (in1,out1,cntrl1);
    input in1,cntrl1;
    output out1;

    bufif1 (out1,in1,cntrl1);
endmodule
```

---

## Errors and Warnings

When you use the coding styles recommended in this chapter, you do not need to declare variables that drive multiply driven nets as tri data objects. But if you don't use these coding styles, or you don't declare the variable as a tri data object, HDL Compiler issues an ELAB-366 error message and terminates. To force HDL Compiler to warn for this condition (ELAB-365) but continue to create a netlist, set

`hdlin_prohibit_nontri_multiple_drivers` to false (the default is true). With this variable false, HDL Compiler builds the generic netlist for all legal designs. If a design is illegal, such as when one of the drivers is a constant, HDL Compiler issues an error message.

The following code generates an ELAB-366 error message (OUT1 is a reg being driven by two `always@` blocks):

```
module three_state (ENABLE, IN1, RESET, OUT1);

    input IN1, ENABLE, RESET;
    output OUT1;
    reg OUT1;

    always @(IN1 or ENABLE)
        if (ENABLE)
            OUT1 = IN1;

    always@ (RESET)
        if (RESET)
            OUT1 = 1'b0;
endmodule
```

The ELAB-366 error message is

```
Error: Net './...v:14: OUT1' or a directly connected net is
driven by more than one source, and not all drivers are
three-state. (ELAB-366)
```



# 7

## HDL Compiler Synthesis Directives

---

HDL Compiler synthesis directives are special comments that affect the actions of HDL Compiler and Design Compiler tools. These comments are ignored by other tools.

These synthesis directives begin as a Verilog comment (`//` or `/*`) followed by a *pragma prefix* (`pragma`, `synopsys`, or `synthesis`) and then the directive. The `//$s` or `//$S` prefix can be used as a shortcut for `//synopsys`. The simulator ignores these directives. Whitespace is permitted (but not required) before and after the Verilog comment prefix.

Note:

Not all directives support all pragma prefixes; see [“Directive Support by Pragma Prefix” on page 7-20](#) for details.

The following sections describe the HDL Compiler synthesis directives:

- [async\\_set\\_reset](#)
- [async\\_set\\_reset\\_local](#)
- [async\\_set\\_reset\\_local\\_all](#)
- [dc\\_tcl\\_script\\_begin](#) and [dc\\_tcl\\_script\\_end](#)
- [enum](#)
- [full\\_case](#)
- [infer\\_multibit](#) and [dont\\_infer\\_multibit](#)
- [infer\\_mux](#)

- `infer_mux_override`
- `infer_onehot_mux`
- `keep_signal_name`
- `one_cold`
- `one_hot`
- `parallel_case`
- `preserve_sequential`
- `sync_set_reset`
- `sync_set_reset_local`
- `sync_set_reset_local_all`
- `template`
- `translate_off` and `translate_on` (Deprecated)
- Directive Support by Pragma Prefix

---

## async\_set\_reset

When you set the `async_set_reset` directive on a single-bit signal, HDL Compiler searches for a branch that uses the signal as a condition and then checks whether the branch contains an assignment to a constant value. If the branch does, the signal becomes an asynchronous reset or set. Use this directive on single-bit signals.

The syntax is

```
// synopsys async_set_reset "signal_name_list"
```

### See Also

- [Inferring Latches](#)

---

## async\_set\_reset\_local

When you set the `async_set_reset_local` directive, HDL Compiler treats listed signals in the specified block as if they have the `async_set_reset` directive set.

Attach the `async_set_reset_local` directive to a block label using the following syntax:

```
// synopsys async_set_reset_local block_label "signal_name_list"
```

---

## async\_set\_reset\_local\_all

When you set the `async_set_reset_local_all` directive, HDL Compiler treats all listed signals in the specified blocks as if they have the `async_set_reset` directive set. Attach the `async_set_reset_local_all` directive to a block label using the following syntax:

```
// synopsys async_set_reset_local_all "block_label_list"
```

To enable the `async_set_reset_local_all` behavior, you must set `hdlin_ff_always_async_set_reset` to false and use the coding style shown in [Example 7-1](#).

### Example 7-1 Coding Style

```
// To enable the async_set_reset_local_all behavior, you must set
// hdlin_ff_always_async_set_reset to false in addition to coding per the
// following template.
```

```
module m1 (input rst,set,d,d1,clk,clk1, output reg q,q1);

// synopsys async_set_reset_local_all "sync_rst"
always @(posedge clk or posedge rst or posedge set) begin :sync_rst
    if (rst)
```

```

        q <= 1'b0;
    else if (set)
        q <= 1'b1;
    else q <= d;
end

    always @(posedge clk1 or posedge rst or posedge set) begin :
default_rst
    if (rst)
        q1 <= 1'b0;
    else if (set)
        q1 <= 1'b1;
    else
        q1 <= d1;
    end
endmodule

```

---

## dc\_tcl\_script\_begin and dc\_tcl\_script\_end

You can embed Tcl commands that set design constraints and attributes within the RTL by using the `dc_tcl_script_begin` and `dc_tcl_script_end` directives, as shown in [Example 7-2](#) and [Example 7-3](#).

### Example 7-2 Embedding Constraints With // Delimiters

```

...
// synopsys dc_tcl_script_begin
// set_max_area 0.0
// set_max_delay 0.0 port_z
// synopsys dc_tcl_script_end
...

```

### Example 7-3 Embedding Constraints With /\* and \*/ Delimiters

```

/* synopsys dc_tcl_script_begin
   set_max_area 10.0
   set_max_delay 5.0 port_z
*/

```

Design Compiler interprets the statements embedded between the `dc_tcl_script_begin` and the `dc_tcl_script_end` directives. If you want to comment out part of your script, use the `#` comment character.

The following items are not supported in embedded Tcl scripts:

- Hierarchical constraints
- Wildcards
- List commands



- Multiple line commands

Observe the following guidelines when using embedded Tcl scripts:

- Constraints and attributes declared outside a module apply to all subsequent modules declared in the file.
- Constraints and attributes declared inside a module apply only to the enclosing module.
- Any `dc_shell` scripts embedded in functions apply to the whole module.
- Include only commands that set constraints and attributes. Do not use action commands such as `compile`, `gen`, and `report`. The tool ignores these commands and issues a warning or error message.
- The constraints or attributes set in the embedded script go into effect after the `read` command is executed. Therefore, variables that affect the read process itself are not in effect before the read.
- Error checking is done after the `read` command finishes. Syntactic and semantic errors in `dc_shell` strings are reported at this time.
- You can have more than one `dc_tcl_script_begin` / `dc_tcl_script_end` pair per file or module. The compiler does not issue an error or warning when it sees more than one pair. Each pair is evaluated and set on the applicable code.
- An embedded `dc_shell` script does not produce any information or status messages unless there is an error in the script.
- If you use embedded Tcl scripts while running in `dc_shell`, Design Compiler issues the following error message:  
  

```
Error: Design 'MID' has embedded Tcl commands which are
ignored in dcsh mode. (UIO-162)
```
- Usage of built-in Tcl commands is not recommended.
- Usage of output redirection commands is not recommended.

---

## enum

Use the `enum` directive with the Verilog parameter definition statement to specify state machine encodings.

The syntax of the `enum` directive is

```
// synopsys enum enum_name
```

[Example 7-4](#) shows the declaration of an enumeration of type colors that is 3 bits wide and has the enumeration literals red, green, blue, and cyan with the values shown.

**Example 7-4 Enumeration of Type Colors**

```
parameter [2:0] // synopsys enum colors
red = 3'b000, green = 3'b001, blue = 3'b010, cyan = 3'b011;
```

The enumeration must include a size (bit-width) specification. [Example 7-5](#) shows an invalid enum declaration.

**Example 7-5 Invalid enum Declaration**

```
parameter /* synopsys enum colors */
red = 3'b000, green = 1;
// [2:0] required
```

[Example 7-6](#) shows a register, a wire, and an input port with the declared type of colors. In each of the following declarations, the array bounds must match those of the enumeration declaration. If you use different bounds, synthesis might not agree with simulation behavior.

**Example 7-6 enum Type Declarations**

```
reg [2:0] /* synopsys enum colors */ counter;
wire [2:0] /* synopsys enum colors */ peri_bus;
input [2:0] /* synopsys enum colors */ input_port;
```

Even though you declare a variable to be of type `enum`, it can still be assigned a bit value that is not one of the enumeration values in the definition. [Example 7-7](#) relates to [Example 7-6](#) and shows an invalid encoding for colors.

**Example 7-7 Invalid Bit Value Encoding for Colors**

```
counter = 3'b111;
```

Because 111 is not in the definition for colors, it is not a valid encoding. HDL Compiler accepts this encoding, but issues a warning for this assignment.

You can use enumeration literals just like constants, as shown in [Example 7-8](#).

**Example 7-8 Enumeration Literals Used as Constants**

```
if (input_port == blue)
    counter = red;
```

If you declare a port as a reg and as an enumerated type, you must declare the enumeration when you declare the port. [Example 7-9](#) shows the declaration of the enumeration.

**Example 7-9 Enumerated Type Declaration for a Port**

```
module good_example (a,b);
    parameter [1:0] /* synopsys enum colors */
        green = 2'b00, white = 2'b11;
    input a;
    output [1:0] /* synopsys enum colors */ b;
    reg [1:0] b;
    ...
endmodule
```

[Example 7-10](#) declares a port as an enumerated type incorrectly because the enumerated type declaration appears with the reg declaration instead of with the output declaration.

*Example 7-10 Incorrect Enumerated Type Declaration for a Port*

```
module bad_example (a,b);
  parameter [1:0] /* synopsys enum colors */
    green = 2'b00, white = 2'b11;
  input a;
  output [1:0] b;
  reg [1:0] /* synopsys enum colors */ b;
  ...
endmodule
```

---

## full\_case

This directive prevents HDL Compiler from generating logic to test for any value that is not covered by the case branches and creating an implicit default branch. Set the `full_case` directive on a case statement when you know that all possible branches of the case statement are listed within the case statement. When a variable is assigned in a case statement that is not full, the variable is conditionally assigned and requires a latch.

**Warning:**

Marking a case statement as full when it actually is not full can cause the simulation to behave differently from the logic HDL Compiler synthesizes because HDL Compiler does not generate a latch to handle the implicit default condition.

The syntax for the `full_case` directive is

```
// synopsys full_case
```

In [Example 7-11](#), `full_case` is set on the first case statement and `parallel_case` and `full_case` directives are set on the second case statement.

**Example 7-11** *//synopsys full\_case Directives*

```

module test (in, out, current_state, next_state);
    input [1:0] in;
    output reg [1:0] out;
    input [3:0] current_state;
    output reg [3:0] next_state;

    parameter state1 = 4'b0001, state2 = 4'b0010, state3 = 4'b0100, state4 =
        4'b1000;

    always @* begin
        case (in) // synopsys full_case
            0: out = 2;
            1: out = 3;
            2: out = 0;
        endcase
        case (1) // synopsys parallel_case full_case
            current_state[0] : next_state = state2;
            current_state[1] : next_state = state3;
            current_state[2] : next_state = state4;
            current_state[3] : next_state = state1;
        endcase
    end
endmodule

```

In the first case statement, the condition `in == 3` is not covered. However, the designer knows that `in == 3` will never occur and therefore sets the `full_case` directive on the case statement.

In the second case statement, not all 16 possible branch conditions are covered; for example, `current_state == 4'b0101` is not covered. However,

- The designer knows that these states will never occur and therefore sets the `full_case` directive on the case statement.
- The designer also knows that only one branch is true at a time and therefore sets the `parallel_case` directive on the case statement.

In the following example, at least one branch will be taken because all possible values of `sel` are covered, that is, 00, 01, 10, and 11:

```
module mux(a, b,c,d,sel,y);
  input a,b,c,d;
  input [1:0] sel;
  output y;
  reg y;
  always @ (a or b or c or d or sel)
  begin
    case (sel)
      2'b00 : y=a;
      2'b01 : y=b;
      2'b10 : y=c;
      2'b11 : y=d;
    endcase
  end
endmodule
```

In the following example, the case statement is not full:

```
module mux(a, b,c,d,sel,y);
  input a,b,c,d;
  input [1:0] sel;
  output y;
  reg y;
  always @ (a or b or c or d or sel)
  begin
    case (sel)
      2'b00 : y=a;
      2'b11 : y=d;
    endcase
  end
endmodule
```

It is unknown what happens when sel equals 01 and 10. In this case, HDL Compiler generates logic to test for any value that is not covered by the case branches and creates an implicit “default” branch that contains no actions. When a variable is assigned in a case statement that is not full, the variable is conditionally assigned and requires a latch.

---

## infer\_multibit and dont\_infer\_multibit

The HDL Compiler tool can infer registers that have identical structures as multibit components.

The following sections describe how to use the multibit inference directives:

- [Using the infer\\_multibit Directive](#)
- [Using the dont\\_infer\\_multibit Directive](#)
- [Reporting Multibit Components](#)

Multibit sequential mapping does not pull in as many levels of logic as single-bit sequential mapping. Therefore, Design Compiler might not infer complex multibit sequential cells, such as a JK flip-flop.

For more information, see the *Design Compiler Optimization Reference Manual*.

**Note:**

The term multibit *component* refers, for example, to an x-bit register in your HDL description. The term multibit library cell refers to a library macro cell, such as a flip-flop cell.

---

## Using the infer\_multibit Directive

By default, the `hdl_infer_multibit` variable is set to the `default_none` value and no multibit cells are inferred unless you set the `infer_multibit` directive on specific components in the Verilog code. This directive gives you control over individual wire and register signals. [Example 7-12](#) shows usage.

### Example 7-12 Inferring a Multibit Flip-Flop With the infer\_multibit Directive

```
module test (d0, d1, d2, rst, clk, q0, q1, q2);
  parameter d_width = 8;

  input [d_width-1:0] d0, d1, d2;
  input clk, rst;
  output [d_width-1:0] q0, q1, q2;
  reg [d_width-1:0] q0, q1, q2;

  //synopsys infer_multibit "q0"
  always @(posedge clk)begin
    if (!rst) q0 <= 0;
    else q0 <= d0;
  end

  always @(posedge clk or negedge rst)begin
    if (!rst) q1 <= 0;
    else q1 <= d1;
  end

  always @(posedge clk or negedge rst)begin
    if (!rst) q2 <= 0;
    else q2 <= d2;
  end

endmodule
```

[Example 7-13](#) shows the inference report.

**Example 7-13 Multibit Inference Report**

```

Inferred memory devices in process
    in routine test line 10 in file
        '/.../test.v'.
=====
| Register Name | Type | Width | Bus | MB | AR | AS | SR | SS | ST |
=====
| q0_reg        | Flip-flop | 8 | Y | Y | N | N | N | N | N |
=====

Inferred memory devices in process
    in routine test line 16 in file
        '/.../test.v'.
=====
| Register Name | Type | Width | Bus | MB | AR | AS | SR | SS | ST |
=====
| q1_reg        | Flip-flop | 8 | Y | N | Y | N | N | N | N |
=====

Inferred memory devices in process
    in routine test line 21 in file
        '/.../test.v'.
=====
| Register Name | Type | Width | Bus | MB | AR | AS | SR | SS | ST |
=====
| q2_reg        | Flip-flop | 8 | Y | N | Y | N | N | N | N |
=====
Compilation completed successfully.

```

The MB column of the inference report indicates if a component is inferred as a multibit component. This report shows the q0\_reg register is inferred as a multibit component. The q1\_reg and q2\_reg registers are not inferred as multibit components.

---

## Using the dont\_infer\_multibit Directive

If you set the `hdl_infer_multibit` variable to the `default_all` value, all bused registers are inferred as multibit components. Use the `dont_infer_multibit` directive to prevent multibit inference.

**Example 7-14 Using the dont\_infer\_multibit Directive**

```

// the hdl_infer_multibit variable is set to the default_all value
module test (d0, d1, d2, rst, clk, q0, q1, q2);
    parameter d_width = 8;

    input [d_width-1:0] d0, d1, d2;
    input clk, rst;
    output [d_width-1:0] q0, q1, q2;
    reg [d_width-1:0] q0, q1, q2;

    always @(posedge clk)begin
        if (!rst) q0 <= 0;
        else q0 <= d0;
    end
end

```

```
//synopsys dont_infer_multibit "q1"
always @(posedge clk or negedge rst)begin
    if (!rst) q1 <= 0;
    else q1 <= d1;
end

always @(posedge clk or negedge rst)begin
    if (!rst) q2 <= 0;
    else q2 <= d2;
end

endmodule
```

[Example 7-15](#) shows the multibit inference report.

#### **Example 7-15 Multibit Inference Report**

```
Inferred memory devices in process
    in routine test line 10 in file
        '/.../test.v'.
=====
| Register Name | Type | Width | Bus | MB | AR | AS | SR | SS | ST |
=====
| q0_reg        | Flip-flop | 8 | Y | Y | N | N | N | N | N |
=====

Inferred memory devices in process
    in routine test line 16 in file
        '/.../test.v'.
=====
| Register Name | Type | Width | Bus | MB | AR | AS | SR | SS | ST |
=====
| q1_reg        | Flip-flop | 8 | Y | N | Y | N | N | N | N |
=====

Inferred memory devices in process
    in routine test line 21 in file
        '/.../test.v'.
=====
| Register Name | Type | Width | Bus | MB | AR | AS | SR | SS | ST |
=====
| q2_reg        | Flip-flop | 8 | Y | Y | Y | N | N | N | N |
=====

Presto compilation completed successfully.
```

---

## **Reporting Multibit Components**

The `report_multibit` command reports all multibit components in the current design. The report, viewable before and after compile, shows the multibit group name and what cells implement each bit.

[Example 7-16](#) shows a multibit component report.



**Example 7-16 Multibit Component Report**

```

*****
Report : multibit
Design : test
Version: F-2011.09
Date   : Thu Aug  4 21:42:30 2011
*****

```

**Attributes:**

```

b - black box (unknown)
h - hierarchical
n - noncombinational
r - removable
u - contains unmapped logic

```

```

Multibit Component : q0_reg
Cell                Reference      Library      Area    Width  Attributes
-----
q0_reg[7]           **SEQGEN**          0.00      1      n, u
q0_reg[6]           **SEQGEN**          0.00      1      n, u
q0_reg[5]           **SEQGEN**          0.00      1      n, u
q0_reg[4]           **SEQGEN**          0.00      1      n, u
q0_reg[3]           **SEQGEN**          0.00      1      n, u
q0_reg[2]           **SEQGEN**          0.00      1      n, u
q0_reg[1]           **SEQGEN**          0.00      1      n, u
q0_reg[0]           **SEQGEN**          0.00      1      n, u
-----
Total 8 cells                0.00      8

```

The multibit group name for registers is set to the name of the bus. In the cell names of the multibit registers with consecutive bits, a colon separates the outlying bits.

If the colon conflicts with the naming requirements of your place-and-route tool, you can change the colon to another delimiter by using the `bus_range_separator_style` variable.

For multibit library cells with nonconsecutive bits, a comma separates the nonconsecutive bits. This delimiter is controlled by the `bus_multiple_separator_style` variable. For example, a 4-bit banked register that implements bits 0, 1, 2, and 5 of bus `data_reg` is named `data_reg [0:2,5]`.

---

## infer\_mux

Use the `infer_mux` directive to infer MUX\_OP cells for a specific case or if statement, as shown in the following RTL code:

```
always@(SEL) begin
case (SEL) // synopsys infer_mux
  2'b00: DOUT <= DIN[0];
  2'b01: DOUT <= DIN[1];
  2'b10: DOUT <= DIN[2];
  2'b11: DOUT <= DIN[3];
endcase
```

You must use a simple variable as the control expression; for example, you can use the input "A" but not the negation of input "A". If statements have special coding considerations. For more information, see [“MUX\\_OP Inference” on page 3-15](#) and [“Considerations When Using if Statements to Code For MUX\\_OPs” on page 3-23](#).

---

## infer\_mux\_override

Use the `infer_mux_override` directive to infer MUX\_OP cells for a specific case or if statement regardless of the settings of the following variables:

- `hdlin_infer_mux`
- `hdlin_mux_oversize_ratio`
- `hdlin_mux_size_limit`
- `hdlin_mux_size_min`

The tool marks the MUX\_OP cells inferred by this directive with the `size_only` attribute to prevent logic decomposition during optimization. This directive infers MUX\_OP cells even if the cells cause loss of resource sharing.

For example,

```
module test (input [1:0] SEL,
             input [3:0] DIN,
             output logic DOUT);
always@(SEL or DIN) begin
case (SEL) // synopsys infer_mux_override
  2'b00: DOUT <= DIN[0];
  2'b01: DOUT <= DIN[1];
  2'b10: DOUT <= DIN[2];
  2'b11: DOUT <= DIN[3];
endcase
end
endmodule
```

---

## infer\_onehot\_mux

Use the `infer_onehot_mux` directive to map combinational logic to one-hot multiplexers in the logic library. For details, see [“One-Hot Multiplexer Inference” on page 3-14](#).

---

## keep\_signal\_name

Use the `keep_signal_name` directive to provide HDL Compiler with guidelines for preserving signal names.

The syntax is

```
// synopsys keep_signal_name "signal_name_list"
```

Set the `keep_signal_name` directive on a signal before any reference is made to that signal; for example, one methodology is to put the directive immediately after the declaration of the signal.

### See Also

- [Keeping Signal Names](#)

---

## one\_cold

A one-cold implementation indicates that all signals in a group are active-low and that only one signal can be active at a given time. Synthesis implements the `one_cold` directive by omitting a priority circuit in front of the flip-flop. Simulation ignores the directive. The `one_cold` directive prevents Design Compiler from implementing priority-encoding logic for the set and reset signals. Attach this directive to set or reset signals on sequential devices, using the following syntax:

```
// synopsys one_cold signal_name_list
```

See [Example 4-24 on page 4-16](#).

---

## one\_hot

A one-hot implementation indicates that all signals in a group are active-high and that only one signal can be active at a given time. Synthesis implements the `one_hot` directive by omitting a priority circuit in front of a flip-flop. Simulation ignores the directive. The `one_hot`

directive prevents Design Compiler from implementing priority-encoding logic for the set and reset signals. Attach this directive to set or reset signals on sequential devices, using the following syntax:

```
// synopsys one_hot signal_name_list
```

See [Example 4-32 on page 4-20](#) and “JK Flip-Flop With Synchronous Set and Reset Using sync\_set\_reset” on page 4-25.

---

## parallel\_case

Set the `parallel_case` directive on a case statement when you know that only one branch of the case statement will be true at a time. This directive prevents HDL Compiler from building additional logic to ensure the first occurrence of a true branch is executed if more than one branch were true at one time.

Warning:

Marking a case statement as parallel when it actually is not parallel can cause the simulation to behave differently from the logic HDL Compiler synthesizes because HDL Compiler does not generate priority encoding logic to make sure that the branch listed first in the case statement takes effect.

The syntax for the `parallel_case` directive is

```
// synopsys parallel_case
```

Use the `parallel_case` directive immediately after the case expression. In [Example 7-17](#), the states of a state machine are encoded as a one-hot signal; the designer knows that only one branch is true at a time and therefore sets the `synopsys parallel_case` directive on the case statement.

### Example 7-17 `parallel_case` Directives

```
reg [3:0] current_state, next_state;
parameter state1 = 4'b0001, state2 = 4'b0010,
          state3 = 4'b0100, state4 = 4'b1000;
case (1)//synopsys parallel_case
  current_state[0] : next_state = state2;
  current_state[1] : next_state = state3;
  current_state[2] : next_state = state4;
  current_state[3] : next_state = state1;
endcase
```

When a case statement is not parallel (more than one branch evaluates to true), priority encoding is needed to ensure that the branch listed first in the case statement takes effect.

The following table summarizes the types of case statements.

Case statement description	Additional logic
Full and parallel	No additional logic is generated.
Full but not parallel	Priority-encoded logic: HDL Compiler generates logic to ensure that the branch listed first in the case statement takes effect.
Parallel but not full	Latches created: HDL Compiler generates logic to test for any value that is not covered by the case branches and creates an implicit “default” branch that requires a latch.
Not parallel and not full	Priority-encoded logic: HDL Compiler generates logic to make sure that the branch listed first in the case statement takes effect.  Latches created: HDL Compiler generates logic to test for any value that is not covered by the case branches and creates an implicit “default” branch that requires a latch.

---

## preserve\_sequential

The `preserve_sequential` directive allows you to preserve specific cells that would otherwise be optimized away by HDL Compiler. See [“Keeping Unloaded Registers” on page 4-8](#).

---

## sync\_set\_reset

Use the `sync_set_reset` directive to infer a D flip-flop with a synchronous set/reset. When you compile your design, the SEQGEN inferred by HDL Compiler will be mapped to a flip-flop in the logic library with a synchronous set/reset pin, or Design Compiler will use a regular D flip-flop and build synchronous set/reset logic in front of the D pin. The choice depends on which method provides a better optimization result.

It is important to use the `sync_set_reset` directive to label the set/reset signal because it tells Design Compiler that the signal should be kept as close to the register as possible during mapping, preventing a simulation/synthesis mismatch which can occur if the set/reset signal is masked by an X during initialization in simulation.

When a single-bit signal has this directive set to true, HDL Compiler checks the signal to determine whether it synchronously sets or resets a register in the design. Attach this directive to single-bit signals. Use the following syntax:

```
//synopsys sync_set_reset "signal_name_list"
```

For an example of a D flip-flop with a synchronous set signal that uses the `sync_set_reset` directive, see [“D Flip-Flop With Synchronous Set: Use sync\\_set\\_reset” on page 4-20](#). For an example of a JK flip-flop with synchronous set and reset signals that uses the `sync_set_reset` directive, see [“JK Flip-Flop With Synchronous Set and Reset Using sync\\_set\\_reset” on page 4-25](#).

For an example of a D flip-flop with a synchronous reset signal that uses the `sync_set_reset` directive, see [Example 4-34 on page 4-21](#). For an example of multiple flip-flops with asynchronous and synchronous controls, see [Example 4-38 on page 4-24](#).

---

## sync\_set\_reset\_local

The `sync_set_reset_local` directive instructs HDL Compiler to treat signals listed in a specified block as if they have the `sync_set_reset` directive set to true.

Attach this directive to a block label, using the following syntax:

```
//synopsys sync_set_reset_local block_label "signal_name_list"
```

[Example 7-18](#) shows the usage.

### Example 7-18 sync\_set\_reset\_local Usage

```
module m1 (input d1,d2,clk, set1, set2, rst1, rst2, output reg q1,q2);

// synopsys sync_set_reset_local sync_rst "rst1"
//always@(posedge clk or negedge rst1)
always@(posedge clk )
begin: sync_rst
    if(~rst1)
        q1 <= 1'b0;
    else if (set1)
        q1 <= 1'b1;
    else
        q1 <= d1;
end

always@(posedge clk)
begin: default_rst
    if(~rst2)
        q2 <= 1'b0;
    else if (set2)
        q2 <= 1'b1;
    else
```

```

        q2 <= d2;
    end

endmodule

```

---

## sync\_set\_reset\_local\_all

The `sync_set_reset_local_all` directive instructs HDL Compiler to treat all signals listed in the specified blocks as if they have the `sync_set_reset` directive set to true.

Attach this directive to a block label, using the following syntax:

```
// synopsys sync_set_reset_local_all "block_label_list"
```

[Example 7-19](#) shows usage.

### Example 7-19 sync\_set\_reset\_local\_all Usage

```

module m2 (input d1,d2,clk, set1, set2, rst1, rst2, output reg q1,q2);

// synopsys sync_set_reset_local_all sync_rst
//always@(posedge clk or negedge rst1)
always@(posedge clk )
begin: sync_rst
    if(~rst1)
        q1 <= 1'b0;
    else if (set1)
        q1 <= 1'b1;
    else
        q1 <= d1;
end

always@(posedge clk)
begin: default_rst
    if(~rst2)
        q2 <= 1'b0;
    else if (set2)
        q2 <= 1'b1;
    else
        q2 <= d2;
end

endmodule

```

---

## template

The `template` directive saves an analyzed file and does not elaborate it. Without this directive, the analyzed file is saved and elaborated. If you use this directive and your design contains parameters, the design is saved as a template. [Example 7-20](#) shows usage.

**Example 7-20** *template Directive*

```

module template (a, b, c);
    input a, b, c;
    // synopsys template
    parameter width = 8;
    .
    .
    .
endmodule

```

For more information, see [“Parameterized Designs” on page 1-21](#).

---

## **translate\_off and translate\_on (Deprecated)**

The `translate_off` and `translate_on` directives are deprecated. To suspend translation of the source code for synthesis, use the `SYNTHESIS` macro and the appropriate conditional directives (``ifdef`, ``ifndef`, ``else`, ``endif`) rather than `translate_off` and `translate_on`.

The `SYNTHESIS` macro replaces the `DC` macro (`DC` is still supported for backward compatibility). See [“Predefined Macros” on page 1-20](#).

---

## **Directive Support by Pragma Prefix**

Not all pragma prefixes support all directives:

- The `synopsys` prefix is intended for directives specific to HDL Compiler. The tool issues an error message if an unknown directive is encountered.
- The `pragma` and `synthesis` prefixes are intended for industry-standard directives. The tool ignores any unsupported directives to allow for directives intended for other tools. Directives specific to HDL Compiler are not supported.

[Table 7-1](#) shows how each directive is handled by each pragma prefix.

*Table 7-1 Directive Support by Pragma Prefix*

Directive	// synopsys, // \$s	// pragma	// synthesis
<code>translate_off / translate_on</code>	Used	Used	Used
<code>dc_tcl_script_begin / dc_tcl_script_end</code> <code>dc_script_begin / dc_script_end</code>	Used	Ignored	Ignored



*Table 7-1 Directive Support by Pragma Prefix (Continued)*

<b>Directive</b>	<b>// synopsys, // \$s</b>	<b>// pragma</b>	<b>// synthesis</b>
async_set_reset	Used	Ignored	Ignored
async_set_reset_local			
async_set_reset_local_all			
enum	Used	Ignored	Ignored
full_case	Used	Ignored	Ignored
parallel_case			
infer_multibit	Used	Ignored	Ignored
dont_infer_multibit			
infer_mux	Used	Ignored	Ignored
infer_mux_override			
infer_onehot_mux	Used	Ignored	Ignored
keep_signal_name	Used	Ignored	Ignored
one_cold	Used	Ignored	Ignored
one_hot			
preserve_sequential	Used	Ignored	Ignored
sync_set_reset	Used	Ignored	Ignored
sync_set_reset_local			
sync_set_reset_local_all			
template	Used	Ignored	Ignored
Any unknown directive	Error	Ignored	Ignored



# A

## Verilog Design Examples

---

These Verilog examples describe the coding techniques for late-arriving signals and master-slave latch inferences.

- [Coding for Late-Arriving Signals](#)
- [Master-Slave Latch Inferences](#)

You can find more examples in the `$DC_HOME_DIR/doc/syn/examples/verilog` directory. The `$DC_HOME_DIR` variable defines the Design Compiler installation location.

---

## Coding for Late-Arriving Signals

The following topics describe coding techniques for late-arriving signals:

- [Duplicating Datapaths](#)
- [Moving Late-Arriving Signals Close to Output](#)

Note:

These techniques apply to the HDL Compiler output. When this output is constrained and optimized by the Design Compiler tool, the structure might be changed depending on the design constraints and option settings. For more information, see the Design Compiler User Guide.

---

### Duplicating Datapaths

To improve the timing of late-arriving signals, you can duplicate datapaths, but at the expense of more area and increased input loads.

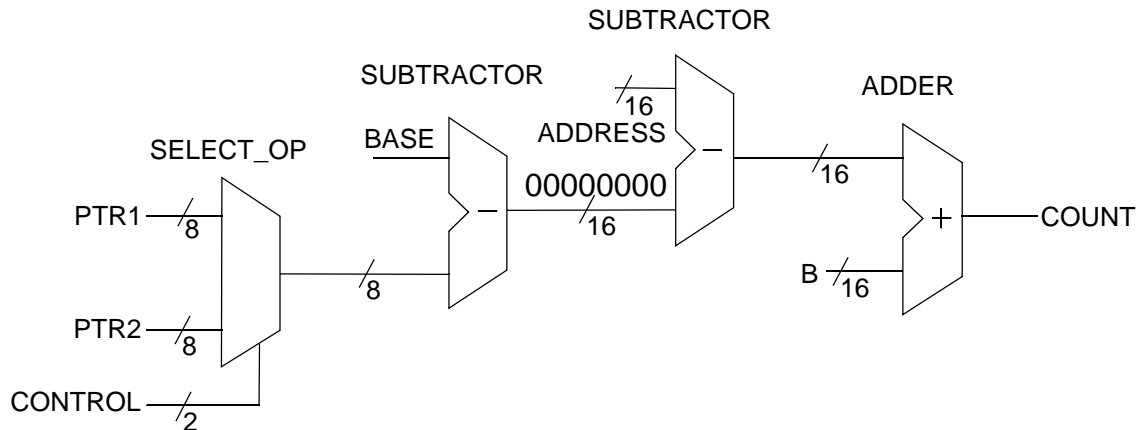
#### Original RTL

In the original RTL, the late-arriving CONTROL signal selects either the PTR1 or PTR2 input, and then the selected input drives a chain of arithmetic operations ending at output COUNT. As shown in [Figure A-1](#), a SELECT\_OP is next to a subtractor. When you see a SELECT\_OP next to an operator, you should duplicate the conditional logic of the SELECT\_OP and move the SELECT\_OP to the end of the operation, as shown [Example A-2](#).

#### Example A-1 Original RTL

```
module BEFORE #(parameter [7:0] BASE = 8'b10000000)(
    input [7:0] PTR1,PTR2,
    input [15:0] ADDRESS, B,
    input CONTROL, //CONTROL is late arriving
    output [15:0] COUNT
);
    wire [7:0] PTR, OFFSET;
    wire [15:0] ADDR;
    assign PTR = (CONTROL == 1'b1) ? PTR1 : PTR2;
    assign OFFSET = BASE - PTR; // Could be any function of f(BASE,PTR)
    assign ADDR = ADDRESS - {8'h00, OFFSET};
    assign COUNT = ADDR + B;
endmodule
```

Figure A-1 Schematic of the Original RTL



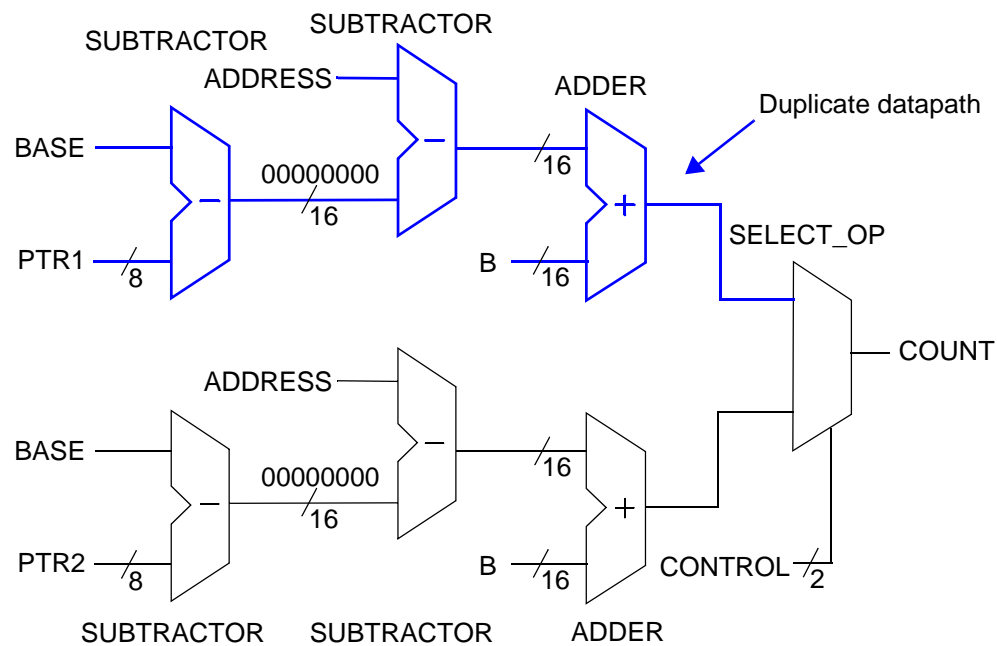
### Modified RTL With the Duplicate Datapath

In the modified RTL, the entire datapath is duplicated because signal CONTROL arrives late. The resulting output COUNT becomes a conditional selection between two parallel datapaths based on input PTR1 or PTR2 and controlled by signal CONTROL. The path from signal CONTROL to output COUNT is no longer a critical path. The timing is improved, but at the expense of more area and more loads on the input pins. In general, the amount of datapath duplication is proportional to the number of conditional statements of the SELECT\_OP. For example, if you have four input signals to the SELECT\_OP, you duplicate three datapaths. To minimize the area of duplicate logic, you can design signal CONTROL to arrive early.

### Example A-2 Modified With the Duplicated Datapath

```
module PRECOMPUTED #(parameter [7:0] BASE = 8'b10000000)(
    input [7:0] PTR1, PTR2,
    input [15:0] ADDRESS, B,
    input CONTROL,
    output [15:0] COUNT
);
    wire [7:0] OFFSET1, OFFSET2;
    wire [15:0] ADDR1, ADDR2, COUNT1, COUNT2;
    assign OFFSET1 = BASE - PTR1; // Could be f(BASE, PTR)
    assign OFFSET2 = BASE - PTR2; // Could be f(BASE, PTR)
    assign ADDR1 = ADDRESS - {8'h00, OFFSET1};
    assign ADDR2 = ADDRESS - {8'h00, OFFSET2};
    assign COUNT1 = ADDR1 + B;
    assign COUNT2 = ADDR2 + B;
    assign COUNT = (CONTROL == 1'b1) ? COUNT1 : COUNT2;
endmodule
```

Figure A-2 Schematic of the Modified RTL

**See Also**

- [SELECT\\_OP Inference](#)

---

## Moving Late-Arriving Signals Close to Output

If you know which signals in your design are late-arriving, you can structure the code so that the late-arriving signals are close to the output.

The following examples show the coding techniques of using the `if` and `case` statements for late-arriving signals:

- [Overview](#)
- [Late-Arriving Data Signal Example 1](#)
- [Late-Arriving Data Signal Example 2](#)
- [Late-Arriving Data Signal Example 3](#)
- [Late-Arriving Control Signal Example 1](#)
- [Late-Arriving Control Signal Example 2](#)

## Overview

To better handle late-arriving signals, use the sequential `if` statements to create a priority-encoded implementation. You assign priority in descending order; that is, the last `if` statement corresponds to the data signal of the last `SELECT_OP` cell in the chain.

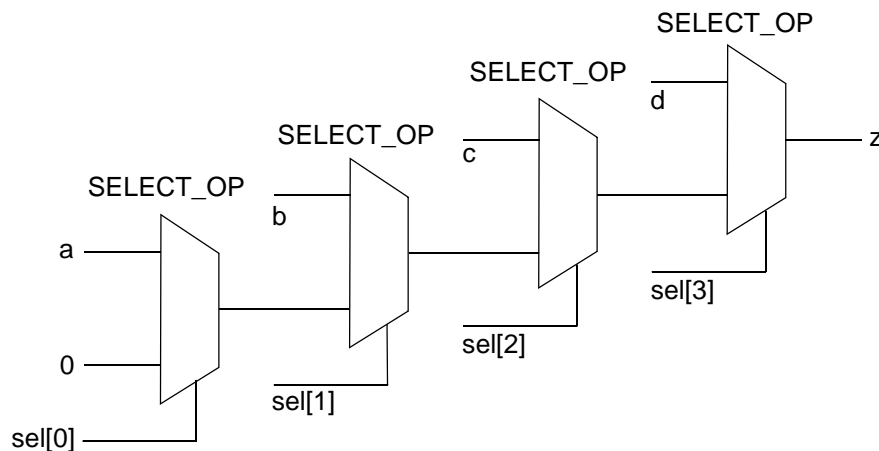
### RTL With Sequential `if` Statements

The `a` and `sel[0]` signals have the longest delays to the `z` output, while the `d` and `sel[3]` signals have the shortest delays to the `z` output.

*Example A-3 RTL With Sequential `if` Statements*

```
module mult_if (
    input a, b, c, d,
    input [3:0] sel,
    output reg z
);
always @(a or b or c or d or sel)
begin
    z = 0;
    if (sel[0]) z = a;
    if (sel[1]) z = b;
    if (sel[2]) z = c;
    if (sel[3]) z = d;
end
endmodule
```

*Figure A-3 Schematic of the RTL*



### Modified RTL With Named `begin-end` Blocks

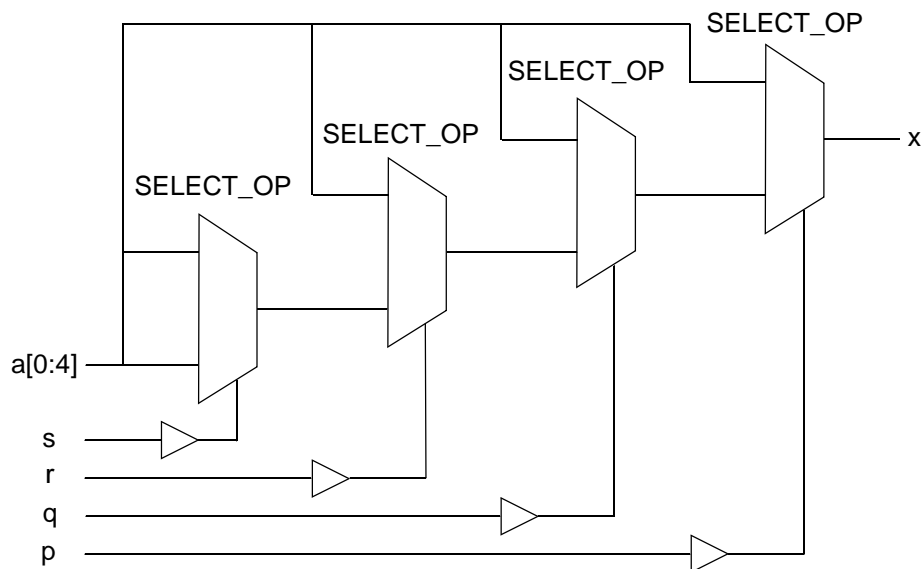
If you use the `if-else` construct with the `begin-end` blocks to build a priority encoded MUX, you must use the named `begin-end` blocks.

**Example A-4 Modified RTL**

```

module m1 (
    input p, q, r, s,
    input [0:4] a,
    output reg x
);
always @(a or p or q or r or s)
if ( p )
    x = a[0];
else begin :b1
    if ( q )
        x = a[1];
    else begin :b2
        if ( r )
            x = a[2];
        else begin :b3
            if ( s )
                x = a[3];
            else
                x = a[4];
        end //b3
    end //b2
end //b1
endmodule

```

**Figure A-4 Schematic of the Modified RTL****Late-Arriving Data Signal Example 1**

This example shows how to place the late-arriving b\_late signal close to the z output.

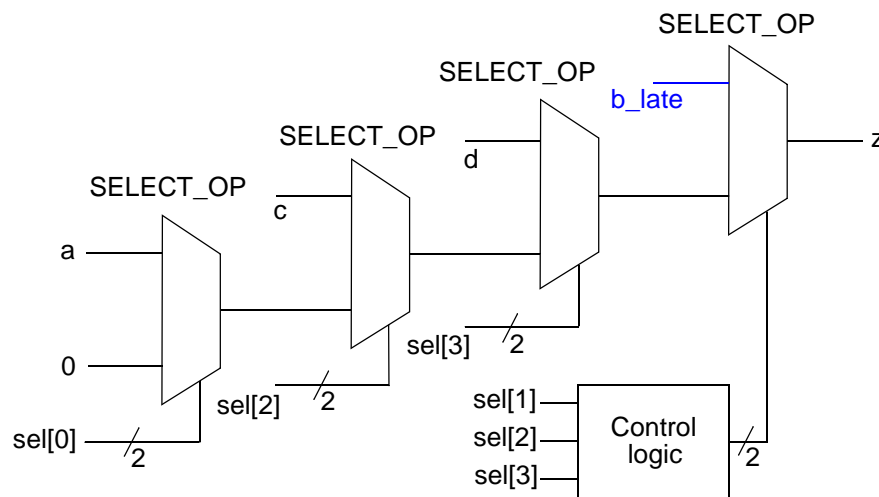


**Example A-5 RTL Containing a Late-Arriving Data Signal**

```

module mult_if_improved (
    input a, b_late, c, d,
    input [3:0] sel,
    output reg z
);
reg z1;
always @(a or b_late or c or d or sel)
begin
    z1 = 0;
    if (sel[0]) z1 = a;
    if (sel[2]) z1 = c;
    if (sel[3]) z1 = d;
    if (sel[1] & ~(sel[2]|sel[3])) z = b_late;
    else      z = z1;
end
endmodule

```

**Figure A-5 Schematic of the RTL****Late-Arriving Data Signal Example 2**

This example contains operators in the conditional expression of an `if` statement. The A signal in the conditional expression is a late-arriving signal, so you should move the signal close to the output.

**Original RTL Containing the Late-Arriving Input A**

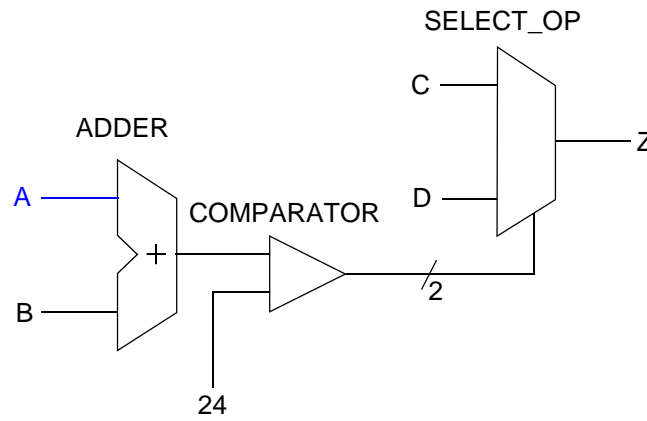
The original RTL contains input A that is late arriving.

**Example A-6 Original RTL**

```

module cond_oper #(parameter N = 8)(
    input [N-1:0] A, B, C, D, // A is late arriving
    output reg [N-1:0] Z
);
always @(A or B or C or D)
begin
    if (A + B < 24) Z = C;
    else           Z = D;
end
endmodule

```

**Figure A-6 Schematic of the Original RTL****Modified RTL**

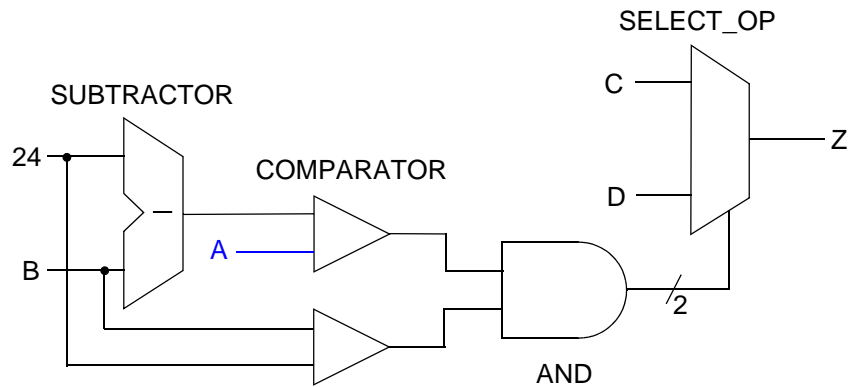
The following RTL restructures the code to move signal A closer to the output.

**Example A-7 Modified RTL**

```

module cond_oper_improved #(parameter N = 8)(
    input [N-1:0] A, B, C, D, // A is late arriving
    output reg [N-1:0] Z
);
always @(A or B or C or D)
begin
    if ( B < 24 && A < 24 - B) Z = C;
    else                       Z = D;
end
endmodule

```

*Figure A-7 Schematic of the Modified RTL*

### Late-Arriving Data Signal Example 3

This example shows a `case` statement nested in an `if` statement. The `Data_late` data signal is late-arriving.

#### Original RTL Containing a Late-Arriving Input `Data_late`

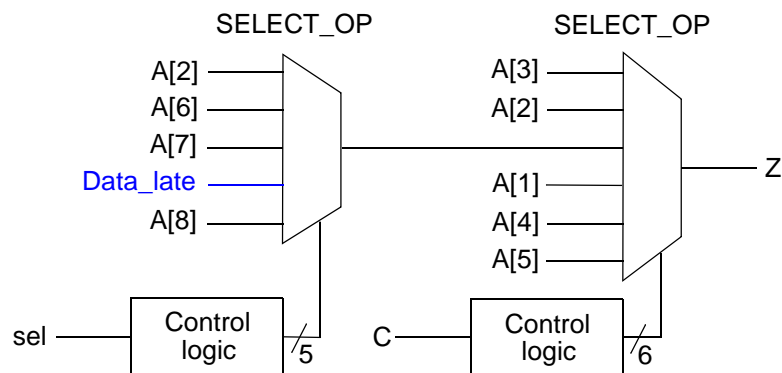
The original RTL contains input `Data_late` that is late arriving.

**Example A-8 Original RTL**

```

module case_in_if_01 (
    input [8:1] A,
    input Data_late,
    input [2:0] sel,
    input [5:1] C,
    output reg Z
);
always @ (sel or C or A or Data_late)
begin
    if (C[1])
        Z = A[5];
    else if (C[2] == 1'b0)
        Z = A[4];
    else if (C[3])
        Z = A[1];
    else if (C[4])
        case (sel)
            3'b010: Z = A[8];
            3'b011: Z = Data_late;
            3'b101: Z = A[7];
            3'b110: Z = A[6];
            default: Z = A[2];
        endcase
    else if (C[5] == 1'b0)
        Z = A[2];
    else
        Z = A[3];
    end
end
endmodule

```

**Figure A-8 Schematic of the Original RTL**

### Modified RTL for the Late-Arriving Signal

The late-arriving signal, `Data_late`, is an input to the first `SELECT_OP` in the path. You can improve the startpoint for synthesis by moving signal `Data_late` close to output `Z`. To do this, move the `Data_late` assignment from the nested `case` statement to a separate `if` statement. As a result, signal `Data_late` is an input to the `SELECT_OP` that is closer to output `Z`.

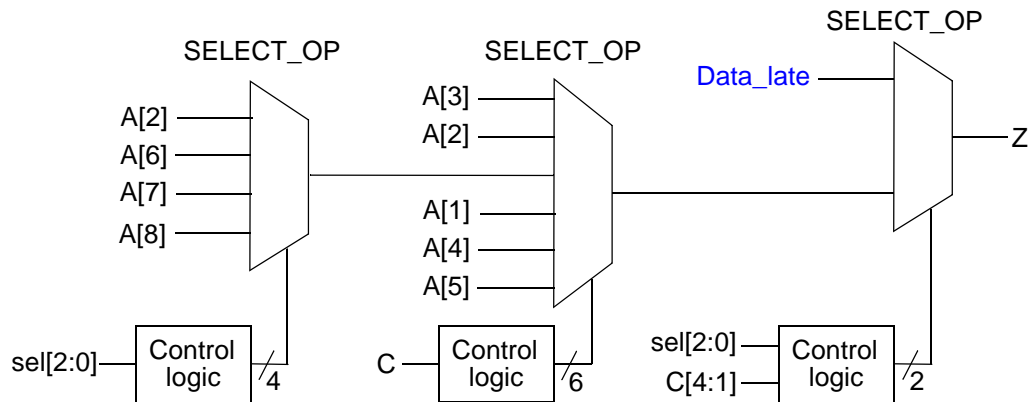
#### Example A-9 Modified RTL

```
module case_in_if_01_improved (
    input [8:1] A,
    input Data_late,
    input [2:0] sel,
    input [5:1] C,
    output reg Z
);
reg Z1, FIRST_IF;
always @(sel or C or A or Data_late)
begin
    if (C[1])
        Z1 = A[5];
    else if (C[2] == 1'b0)
        Z1 = A[4];
    else if (C[3])
        Z1 = A[1];
    else if (C[4])
        case (sel)
            3'b010: Z1 = A[8];
            //3'b011: Z1 = Data_late;
            3'b101: Z1 = A[7];
            3'b110: Z1 = A[6];
            default: Z1 = A[2];
        endcase
    else if (C[5] == 1'b0)
        Z1 = A[2];
    else
        Z1 = A[3];

    FIRST_IF = (C[1] == 1'b1) || (C[2] == 1'b0) || (C[3] == 1'b1);

    if (!FIRST_IF && C[4] && (sel == 3'b011))
        Z = Data_late;
    else
        Z = Z1;
end
endmodule
```

Figure A-9 Schematic of the Modified RTL



### Late-Arriving Control Signal Example 1

If you have a late-arriving control signal in the design, you should place it as close to the output as possible.

In this example, input Ctrl\_late is a late-arriving control signal and is placed close to output Z.

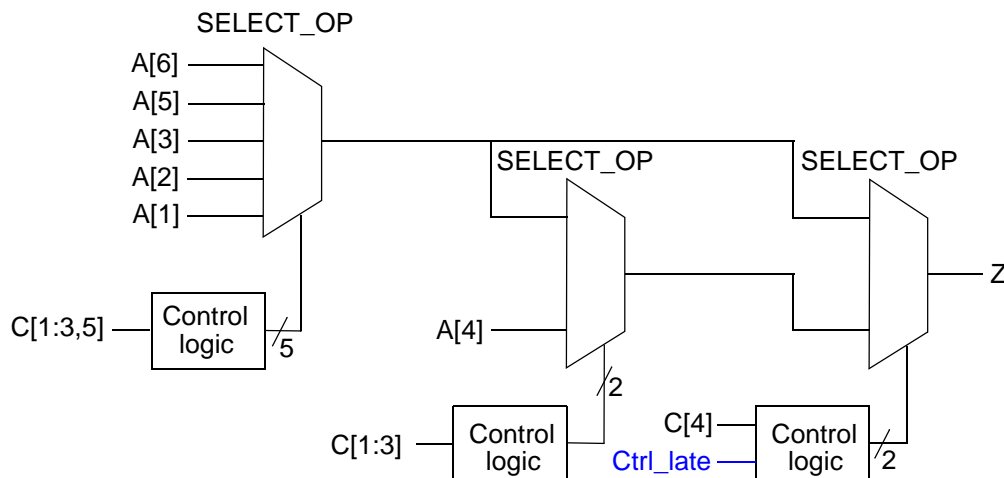
**Example A-10** *RTL With a Late-Arriving Control Signal*

```

module single_if_improved (
    input [6:1] A,
    input [5:1] C,
    input Ctrl_late,
    output reg Z
);
reg Z1;
wire Z2, prev_cond;
always @(A or C)
begin
    // remove the branch with the late-arriving control signal
    if (C[1] == 1'b1) Z1 = A[1];
    else if (C[2] == 1'b0) Z1 = A[2];
    else if (C[3] == 1'b1) Z1 = A[3];
    else if (C[5] == 1'b0) Z1 = A[5];
    else
        Z1 = A[6];
end

assign Z2 = A[4];
assign prev_cond = (C[1] == 1'b1) || (C[2] == 1'b0) || (C[3] == 1'b1);
always @(C or prev_cond or Ctrl_late or Z1 or Z2)
begin
    if (C[4] == 1'b1 && Ctrl_late == 1'b0)
        if (prev_cond) Z = Z1;
        else
            Z = Z2;
    else
        Z = Z1;
end
endmodule

```

**Figure A-10** *Schematic of the RTL*

## Late-Arriving Control Signal Example 2

If you know your design has a late-arriving control signal, you should place the signal close to the output.

### Original RTL

This example shows an `if` statement nested in a `case` statement and contains a late-arriving control signal, `sel[1]`.

#### Example A-11 Original RTL

```
module if_in_case (
    input [2:0] sel, // sel[1] is late arriving
    input X, A, B, C, D,
    output reg Z
);

always @(sel or X or A or B or C or D)
begin
    case (sel)
        3'b000: Z = A;
        3'b001: Z = B;
        3'b010: if (X) Z = C;
                else Z = D;
        3'b100: Z = A ^ B;
        3'b101: Z = !(A && B);
        3'b111: Z = !A;
        default: Z = !B;
    endcase
end
endmodule
```

### Modified RTL

Because signal `sel[1]` is a late-arriving input, you should restructure the code to get the best startpoint for synthesis. As shown in the modified RTL, the nested `if` statement is placed outside the `case` statement so that signal `sel[1]` is closer to output `Z`. Output `Z` takes either value `Z1` or `Z2` depending on whether signal `sel[1]` is 0 or 1. When signal `sel[1]` is late arriving, placing it closer to output `Z` improves the timing.



**Example A-12 Modified RTL**

```

module if_in_case_improved (
    input [2:0] sel, // sel[1] is late arriving
    input X, A, B, C, D,
    output reg Z
);
reg Z1, Z2;
reg [1:0] i_sel;
always @ (sel or X or A or B or C or D)
begin
    i_sel = {sel[2],sel[0]};

    case (i_sel) // For sel[1]=0
        2'b00:    Z1 = A;
        2'b01:    Z1 = B;
        2'b10:    Z1 = A ^ B;
        2'b11:    Z1 = !(A && B);
        default:  Z1 = !B;
    endcase

    case (i_sel) // For sel[1]=1
        2'b00:    if (X) Z2 = C;
                  else  Z2 = D;
        2'b11:    Z2 = !A;
        default:  Z2 = !B;
    endcase

    if (sel[1]) Z = Z2;
    else Z = Z1;
end
endmodule

```

---

## Master-Slave Latch Inferences

These topics provide information about how to direct the tool to infer various types of master-slave latches.

- [Overview for Inferring Master-Slave Latches](#)
- [Master-Slave Latch With One Master-Slave Clock Pair](#)
- [Master-Slave Latch With Multiple Master-Slave Clock Pairs](#)
- [Master-Slave Latch With Discrete Components](#)

---

## Overview for Inferring Master-Slave Latches

The Design Compiler tool infers master-slave latches through the `clocked_on_also` attribute. You attach this signal-type attribute to the clocks using an embedded `dc_shell` script.

Follow these coding guidelines to describe a master-slave latch:

- Specify the master-slave latch as a flip-flop by using only the slave clock.
- Specify the master clock as an input port, but do not connect it.
- Attach the `clocked_on_also` attribute to the master clock port.

This coding style requires that cells in the target library contain slave clocks marked with the `clocked_on_also` attribute. The `clocked_on_also` attribute defines the slave clocks in the cell state declaration. For more information about defining slave clocks in the target library, see the *Library Compiler User Guide*.

The Design Compiler tool does not use D flip-flops to implement the equivalent functionality of a master-slave latch.

Note:

Although the vendor's component behaves as a master-slave latch, the Library Compiler tool supports only the description of a master-slave flip-flop.

---

## Master-Slave Latch With One Master-Slave Clock Pair

This example shows a basic master-slave latch with one master-slave clock pair using the `dc_tcl_script_begin` and `dc_tcl_script_end` compiler directives.

### Example A-13 Master-Slave Latch

```
module mslatch (
    input SCK, MCK, DATA,
    output reg Q
);
// synopsys dc_tcl_script_begin
// set_attribute -type string MCK signal_type clocked_on_also
// set_attribute -type boolean MCK level_sensitive true
// synopsys dc_tcl_script_end

always @ (posedge SCK) Q <= DATA;

endmodule
```

**Example A-14 Inference Report**

Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
Q_reg	Flip-flop	1	N	N	N	N	N	N	N

**See Also**

- [dc\\_tcl\\_script\\_begin](#) and [dc\\_tcl\\_script\\_end](#)

---

## Master-Slave Latch With Multiple Master-Slave Clock Pairs

If the design requires more than one master-slave clock pair, you must specify the associated slave clock in addition to the `clocked_on_also` attribute. This example shows how to use the `clocked_on_also` attribute with the `associated_clock` option.

**Example A-15 RTL for Inferring Master-Slave Latches With Two Pairs of Clocks**

```

module mslatch2 (
    input SCK1, SCK2, MCK1, MCK2, D1, D2,
    output reg Q1, Q2
);
// synopsys dc_tcl_script_begin
// set_attribute -type string MCK1 signal_type clocked_on_also
// set_attribute -type boolean MCK1 level_sensitive true
// set_attribute -type string MCK1 associated_clock SCK1
// set_attribute -type string MCK2 signal_type clocked_on_also
// set_attribute -type boolean MCK2 level_sensitive true
// set_attribute -type string MCK2 associated_clock SCK2
// synopsys dc_tcl_script_end

always @ (posedge SCK1) Q1 <= D1;
always @ (posedge SCK2) Q2 <= D2;
endmodule

```

**Example A-16 Inference Reports**

Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
Q1_reg	Flip-flop	1	N	N	N	N	N	N	N

Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
Q2_reg	Flip-flop	1	N	N	N	N	N	N	N

## Master-Slave Latch With Discrete Components

If your target library does not contain master-slave latch components, you can direct the tool to infer two-phase systems by using D latches.

This example shows a simple two-phase system with clocks MCK and SCK.

### Example A-17 RTL for Two-Phase Clocks

```
module latch_verilog (
    input DATA, MCK, SCK,
    output reg Q
);
    reg TEMP;

    always @(DATA or MCK)
        if (MCK) TEMP <= DATA;

    always @(TEMP or SCK)
        if (SCK) Q <= TEMP;

endmodule
```

### Example A-18 Inference Reports

Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
TEMP_reg	Latch	1	N	N	N	N	-	-	-

Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
Q_reg	Latch	1	N	N	N	N	-	-	-

# B

## Verilog Language Support

---

The following sections describe the Verilog language as supported by HDL Compiler:

- [Syntax](#)
- [Verilog Keywords](#)
- [Unsupported Verilog Language Constructs](#)
- [Construct Restrictions and Comments](#)
- [Verilog 2001 and 2005 Supported Constructs](#)
- [Ignored Constructs](#)
- [Verilog 2001 Feature Examples](#)
- [Verilog 2005 Feature Example](#)
- [Configurations](#)

---

## Syntax

Synopsys supports the Verilog syntax as described in the IEEE STD 1364-2001.

The lexical conventions HDL Compiler uses are described in the following sections:

- [Comments](#)
- [Numbers](#)

---

### Comments

You can enter comments anywhere in a Verilog description, in two forms:

- Beginning with two slashes `//`  
HDL Compiler ignores all text between these characters and the end of the current line.
- Beginning with the two characters `/*` and ending with `*/`  
HDL Compiler ignores all text between these characters, so you can continue comments over more than one line.

Note:

You cannot nest comments.

---

### Numbers

You can declare numbers in several different radices and bit-widths. A radix is the base number on which a numbering system is built. For example, the binary numbering system has a radix of 2, octal has a radix of 8, and decimal has a radix of 10.

You can use these three number formats:

- A simple decimal number that is a sequence of digits in the range of 0 to 9. All constants declared this way are assumed to be 32-bit numbers.
- A number that specifies the bit-width as well as the radix. These numbers are the same as those in the previous format, except that they are preceded by a decimal number that specifies the bit-width.
- A number followed by a two-character sequence prefix that specifies the number's size and radix. The radix determines which symbols you can include in the number. Constants declared this way are assumed to be 32-bit numbers. Any of these numbers can include underscores ( `_` ), which improve readability and do not affect the value of

the number. [Table B-1](#) summarizes the available radices and valid characters for the number.

*Table B-1 Verilog Radices*

Name	Character prefix	Valid characters
Binary	'b	0 1 x X z Z _ ?
Octal	'o	0–7 x X z Z _ ?
Decimal	'd	0–9 _
Hexadecimal	'h	0–9 a–f A–F x X z Z _ ?

[Example B-1](#) shows some valid number declarations.

*Example B-1 Valid Verilog Number Declarations*

```

391           // 32-bit decimal number
'h3a13        // 32-bit hexadecimal number
10'o1567      // 10-bit octal number
3'b010        // 3-bit binary number
4'd9          // 4-bit decimal number
40'hFF_FFFF_FFFF // 40-bit hexadecimal number
2'bxx         // 2-bits don't care
3'bzzz        // 3-bits high-impedance

```

## Verilog Keywords

[Table B-2](#) lists the Verilog keywords. You cannot use these words as user variable names unless you use an escape identifier.

Important:

Configuration-related keywords are not treated as keywords outside of configurations.  
HDL Compiler does not support configurations at this time.

*Table B-2 Verilog Keywords*

always	and	assign	automatic	begin	buf
bufif0	bufif1	case	casex	casez	cell
cmos	config	deassign	default	defparam	design
disable	edge	else	end	endcase	endconfig

*Table B-2 Verilog Keywords (Continued)*

endfunction	endgenerate	endmodule	endprimitive	endspecify	endtable
endtask	event	for	force	forever	fork
function	generate	genvar	highz0	highz1	if
ifnone	incdir	include	initial	inout	input
instance	integer	join	large	liblist	library
localparam	macromodule	medium	module	nand	negedge
nmos	nor	noshowcancelled	not	notif0	notif1
or	output	parameter	pmos	posedge	primitive
pull0	pull1	pulldown	pullup	pulstyle_ onevent	pulstyle_ _ondetect
rcmos	real	realtime	reg	release	repeat
rnmos	rpmos	rtran	rtranif0	rtranif1	scalared
showcancelled	signed	small	specify	specparam	strong0
strong1	supply0	supply1	table	task	time
tran	tranif0	tranif1	tri	tri0	tri1
triand	trior	trireg	unsigned	use	vectored
wait	wand	weak0	weak1	while	wire
wor	xnor	xor			

## Unsupported Verilog Language Constructs

HDL Compiler does not support the following constructs:

- Configurations
- Unsupported definitions and declarations
  - primitive definition



- time declaration
- event declaration
- triand, trior, tri1, tri0, and trireg net types
- Ranges for integers
- Unsupported statements
  - initial statement
  - repeat statement
  - delay control
  - event control
  - forever statement (The forever loop is only supported if it has an associated disable condition, making the exit condition deterministic.)
  - fork statement
  - deassign statement
  - force statement
  - release statement
- Unsupported operators
  - Case equality and inequality operators (=== and !==)
- Unsupported gate-level constructs
  - nmos, pmos, cmos, rnmos, rpms, rcmos
  - pullup, pulldown, tranif0, tranif1, rtran, rtrainf0, and rtrainf1 gate types
- Unsupported miscellaneous constructs
  - hierarchical names within a module

If you use an unsupported construct, HDL Compiler issues a syntax error such as

```
event is not supported
```

---

## Construct Restrictions and Comments

Construct restrictions and guidelines are described in the following sections:

- [always Blocks](#)

- [generate Statements](#)
- [Conditional Expressions \(?:\) Resource Sharing](#)
- [Case](#)
- [defparam](#)
- [disable](#)
- [Blocking and Nonblocking Assignments](#)
- [Macromodule](#)
- [inout Port Declaration](#)
- [tri Data Type](#)
- [HDL Compiler Directives](#)
- [reg Types](#)
- [Types in Busing](#)
- [Combinational while Loops](#)

---

## **always Blocks**

The tool does not support more than one independent `if` block when asynchronous behavior is modeled within an `always` block. If the `always` block is purely synchronous, the tool supports multiple independent `if` blocks. In addition, the tool does not support more than one conditional operator (`?:`) inside an `always` block.

Note:

If an `always` block is very small, the tool might move the logic inside the block during synthesis.

---

## **generate Statements**

Synopsys support of the `generate` statement is described in the following sections:

- [Generate Overview](#)
- [Restrictions](#)

## Generate Overview

HDL Compiler supports both the 2001 and the 2005 standards for the `generate` statement. The default is the 2005 standard; to enable the 2001 standard, set the `hdlin_vrlg_std` variable to 2001. The following subsections describe the naming-style differences between these two standards.

## Types of generate Blocks

### Standalone generate Blocks

*Standalone generate blocks* are blocks using the `begin` statement that are not associated with a *conditional generate* or *loop generate* block. These are legal under the 2001 standard, but are illegal according to the Verilog 2005 LRM, as illustrated in the following example.

#### Example B-2 Standalone generate Block

```
module top ( input in1, output out1 );
    generate
begin : b1
    mod1 U1(in1, out1);
end
endgenerate
endmodule

module mod1( input in1, output out1 );
endmodule
```

When you use the 2001 standard, HDL Compiler creates the name `b1.U1` for mod 1:

Cell	Reference	Library	Area	Attributes
b1.U1	mod1		0.000000	b
Total 1 cells			0.000000	

When you use the 2005 standard, HDL Compiler issues a VER-946 error message:

```
Compiling source file RTL/t1.v
Error: RTL/t1.v:3: Syntax error on an obsolete Verilog 2001 construct
standalone generate block 'b1'. (VER-946)
*** HDLC compilation terminated with 1 errors. ***
```

### Anonymous generate Blocks

*Anonymous generate blocks* are `generate` blocks that do not have a user-defined label. They are also referred to as unnamed blocks.

According to the 2001 Verilog LRM, anonymous blocks do not create their own scope, but the 2005 standard has an implicit naming convention that allows scope creation. The Verilog

2005 standard assigns a number to every `generate` construct in a given scope. The number is 1 for the first construct and is incremented by 1 for each subsequent `generate` construct in the scope. All unnamed `generate` blocks are given the name `genblkn`, where *n* is the number assigned to the enclosing `generate` construct. If the name conflicts with an explicitly declared name, leading zeroes are added in front of the number until the conflict is resolved.

The examples that follow illustrate the difference between the two standards.

**Example B-3 Anonymous generate Block**

```
module top( input [0:3] in1, output [0:3] out1 );
  genvar I;
  generate
  for( I = 0; I < 3; I = I+1 ) begin: b1
    if( 1 ) begin : b2
      if( 1 )
        if( 1 )
          if( 1 )
            mod1 U1(in1[I], out1[I]);
          end
        end
      end
    end
  endgenerate
endmodule

module mod1( input in1, output out1 );
endmodule
```

When you use the Verilog 2001 standard, HDL Compiler creates the names `b1[0].b2.U1`, `b1[1].b2.U1`, and `b1[2].b2.U1` for the instantiated subblocks:

Cell	Reference	Library	Area	Attributes
b1[0].b2.U1	mod1		0.000000	b
b1[1].b2.U1	mod1		0.000000	b
b1[2].b2.U1	mod1		0.000000	b
Total 3 cells			0.000000	

When you use the Verilog 2005 standard, HDL Compiler creates the names `b1[0].b2.genblk1.U1`, `b1[1].b2.genblk1.U1`, and `b1[2].b2.genblk1.U1`. Note that there are no multiple `genblk1`'s for the nested anonymous `if` blocks:

Cell	Reference	Library	Area	Attributes
b1[0].b2.genblk1.U1	mod1		0.000000	b
b1[1].b2.genblk1.U1	mod1		0.000000	b
b1[2].b2.genblk1.U1	mod1		0.000000	b
Total 3 cells			0.000000	

Another type of anonymous `generate` block is created when the block does not have a label, but each block has a `begin...end` statement:

**Example B-4 Anonymous generate Block with begin...end**

```
module top( input [0:3] in1, output [0:3] out1 );
  genvar I;
  generate
  for( I = 0; I < 3; I = I+1 ) begin: b1
    if( 1 ) begin : b2
      if( 1 ) begin
        if( 1 ) begin
          if( 1 ) begin
            mod1 U1(in1[I], out1[I]);
          end
        end
      end
    end
  end
endgenerate
endmodule

module mod1( input in1, output out1 );
endmodule
```

When you use the 2001 standard, HDL Compiler creates the names `b1[0].b2.U1`, `b1[1].b2.U1`, and `b1[2].b2.U1` for the instantiated subblocks:

Cell	Reference	Library	Area	Attributes
b1[0].b2.U1	mod1		0.000000	b
b1[1].b2.U1	mod1		0.000000	b
b1[2].b2.U1	mod1		0.000000	b
Total 3 cells			0.000000	

When you use the 2005 standard, the tool creates the names `b1[0].b2.genblk1.genblk1.genblk1.U1`, `b1[1].b2.genblk1.genblk1.genblk1.U1`, `b1[2].b2.genblk1.genblk1.genblk1.U1`:

Cell	Reference	Library	Area	Attributes
b1[0].b2.genblk1.genblk1.genblk1.U1	mod1		0.000000	b
b1[1].b2.genblk1.genblk1.genblk1.U1	mod1		0.000000	b
b1[2].b2.genblk1.genblk1.genblk1.U1	mod1		0.000000	b
Total 3 cells			0.000000	

Note that there is a `genblk1` for each of the nested `begin...end if` blocks that creates a new scope.

The following example illustrates how scope creation can produce an error under the Verilog 2005 standard from code that compiles cleanly under the Verilog 2001 standard:

#### Example B-5 Scope Creation

```
module top(input in, output out);
generate if(1) begin
    wire w = in;
end endgenerate
assign out = w;
endmodule
```

Under the Verilog 2001 standard, `w` is visible in the `assign` statement, but under the Verilog 2005 standard, scope creation makes `w` invisible outside the `generate` block, and HDL Compiler issues an error message:

```
Error: RTL/t5.v:5: The symbol 'w' is not defined. (VER-956)
```

## Loop Generate Blocks and Conditional Generate Blocks

*Loop generate blocks* are `generate` blocks that contain a `for` loop. *Conditional generate blocks* are `generate` blocks that contain an `if` statement. Loop generate blocks and conditional generate blocks can be nested, as shown in the following example.

#### Example B-6 Loop and Conditional generates

```
module top( input D1, input clk, output Q1 );
genvar i, j;
parameter param1 = 0;
parameter param2 = 1;

generate
for (i=0; i < 3; i=i+1) begin : loop1
    for (j=0; j < 2; j=j+1) begin : loop2
        if (j == param1) begin : if1_label
            memory U_00 (D1,clk,Q1);
        end
        if (j == param2) begin : if2_label
            memory U_00 (D1,clk,Q1);
        end
    end //loop2
end //loop1
endgenerate
endmodule

module memory( input D1, input clk, output Q1 );
endmodule
```

In this case, the instance name is the same under both standards:

Cell	Reference	Library	Area	Attributes
-----				
loop1[0].loop2[0].if1_label.U_00				
	memory		0.000000	b

```

loop1[0].loop2[1].if2_label.U_00
                                memory                0.000000   b
loop1[1].loop2[0].if1_label.U_00
                                memory                0.000000   b
loop1[1].loop2[1].if2_label.U_00
                                memory                0.000000   b
loop1[2].loop2[0].if1_label.U_00
                                memory                0.000000   b
loop1[2].loop2[1].if2_label.U_00
                                memory                0.000000   b
-----
Total 6 cells

```

## Restrictions

- Hierarchical Names (Cross Module Reference)

HDL Compiler supports hierarchical names or cross-module references, if the hierarchical name remains inside the module that contains the name and each item on the hierarchical path is part of the module containing the reference.

In the following code, the item is not part of the module and is not supported.

```

module top ();
    wire x;
    down d ();
endmodule

module down ();
    wire y, z;
    assign t = top.d.z;
// not supported:
// hier. ref. starts outside current module
endmodule

```

- Parameter Override (defparam)

The use of defparam is highly discouraged in synthesis because of ambiguity problems. Because of these problems, defparam is not supported inside generate blocks. For details, see the Verilog 1800 LRM.

---

## Conditional Expressions (?:) Resource Sharing

HDL Compiler supports resource sharing in conditional expressions such as

```
dout = sel ? (a + b) : (a + c);
```

In such cases, HDL Compiler marks the adders as sharable; Design Compiler determines the final implementation during timing-drive resource sharing.

The tool does not support more than one ?: operator inside an always block. For more information, see [“always Blocks” on page B-6](#).

---

## Case

The case construct is discussed in the following sections:

- [casez and casex](#)
- [Full Case and Parallel Case](#)

### casez and casex

HDL Compiler allows ? and z bits in casez items but not in expressions; that is, the z bits are allowed in the branches of the case statement but not in the expression immediately following the casez keyword.

```
casez (y)    // y is referred to as the case expression
2'b1z:      //2'b1z is referred to as the item
```

[Example B-7](#) shows an invalid expression in a casez statement.

#### *Example B-7 Invalid casez Expression*

```
casez (1'bz) //illegal testing of an expression
...
endcase
```

The same holds true for casex statements using x, ?, and z. The code

```
casex (a)
2'b1x : // matches 2'b10 and 2'b11
endcase
```

does not equal the following code:

```
b = 2'b1x;
casex (a)
b:    // in this case, 2'b1x only matches 2'b10
endcase
```

When x is assigned to a variable and the variable is used in a casex item, the x does not match both 0 and 1 as it would for a literal x listed in the case item.

### Full Case and Parallel Case

Case statements can be full or parallel. HDL Compiler can usually determine automatically whether a case statement is full or parallel. [Example B-8](#) shows a case statement that is both full and parallel.



**Example B-8** *A case Statement That Is Both Full and Parallel*

```

input [1:0] a;
always @(a or w or x or y or z) begin
    case (a)
        2'b11:
            b = w ;
        2'b10:
            b = x ;
        2'b01:
            b = y ;
        2'b00:
            b = z ;
    endcase
end

```

In [Example B-9](#), the case statement is not parallel or full, because the values of inputs w and x cannot be determined.

**Example B-9** *A case Statement That Is Not Full and Not Parallel*

```

always @(w or x) begin
    case (2'b11)
        w:
            b = 10 ;
        x:
            b = 01 ;
    endcase
end

```

However, if you know that only one of the inputs equals 2'b11 at a given time, you can use the `parallel_case` directive to avoid synthesizing an unnecessary priority encoder.

If you know that either w or x always equals 2'b11 (a situation known as a one-branch tree), you can use the `full_case` directive to avoid synthesizing an unnecessary latch. A latch is necessary whenever a variable is conditionally assigned. Marking a case as full tells the compiler that some branch will be taken, so there is no need for an implicit default branch. If a variable is assigned in all branches of the case, HDL Compiler then knows that the variable is not conditionally assigned in that case, and, therefore, that particular case statement does not result in a latch for that variable.

However, if the variable is assigned in only some branches of the case statement, a latch is still required as shown in [Example B-10](#). In addition, other case statements might cause a latch to be inferred for the same variable.

**Example B-10** *Latch Result When Variable Is Not Fully Assigned*

```

reg a, b;
reg [1:0] c;
case (c) // synopsys full_case
    0: begin a = 1; b = 0; end
    1: begin a = 0; b = 0; end
    2: begin a = 1; b = 1; end
    3: b = 1; // a is not assigned here
endcase

```

For more information, see [“parallel\\_case” on page 7-16](#) and [“full\\_case” on page 7-7](#).

---

**defparam**

Use of defparam is highly discouraged in synthesis because of ambiguity problems. Because of these problems, defparam is not supported inside generate blocks. For details, see the Verilog LRM.

---

**disable**

HDL Compiler supports the disable statement when you use it in named blocks and when it is used to disable an enclosing block. When a disable statement is executed, it causes the named block to terminate. You cannot disable a block that is not in the same always block or task as the disable statement. A comparator description that uses disable is shown in [Example B-11](#).

**Example B-11** *Comparator Using disable*

```

begin : compare
    for (i = 7; i >= 0; i = i - 1) begin
        if (a[i] != b[i]) begin
            greater_than = a[i];
            less_than = ~a[i];
            equal_to = 0;
            //comparison is done so stop looping
            disable compare;
        end
    end
end

// If you get here a == b
// If the disable statement is executed, the next three
// lines will not be executed
greater_than = 0;
less_than = 0;
equal_to = 1;
end

```

You can also use a disable statement to implement a synchronous reset, as shown in [Example B-12](#).

*Example B-12 Synchronous Reset of State Register Using disable in a forever Loop*

```
always
begin: test
  @ (posedge clk)
  if (Reset)
    begin
      z <= 1'b0;
      disable test;
    end
  z <= a;
end
```

The disable statement in [Example B-12](#) causes the test block to terminate immediately and return to the beginning of the block.

---

## Blocking and Nonblocking Assignments

HDL Compiler does not allow both blocking and nonblocking assignments to the same variable within an always block.

The following code applies both blocking and nonblocking assignments to the same variable in one always block.

```
always @(posedge clk or negedge reset) begin
  if (~ reset)
    q = 1'b0;
  else
    q <= d;
end
```

HDL Compiler does not permit this and generates an error message.

During simulation, race conditions can result from blocking assignments, as shown in [Example B-13](#). In this example, the value of x is indeterminate, because multiple procedural blocks run concurrently, causing y to be loaded into x at the same time z is loading into y. The value of x after the first @ (posedge clk) is indeterminate. Use of nonblocking assignments solves this race condition, as shown in [Example B-14](#).

In [Example B-13](#) and [Example B-14](#), HDL Compiler creates the gates shown in [Figure B-1](#).

*Example B-13 Race Condition Using Blocking Assignments*

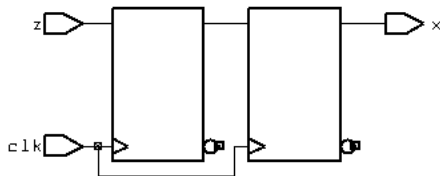
```
always @(posedge clk)
  x = y;
always @(posedge clk)
  y = z;
```

**Example B-14 Race Solved With Nonblocking Assignments**

```

always @(posedge clk)
    x <= y;
always @(posedge clk)
    y <= x;

```

**Figure B-1 Simulator Race Condition—Synthesis Gates**

If you want to switch register values, use nonblocking assignments, because blocking assignments will not accomplish the switch. For example, in [Example B-15](#), the desired outcome is a swap of the x and y register values. However, after the positive clock edge, y does not end up with the value of x; y ends up with the original value of y. This happens because blocking statements are order dependent and each statement within the procedural block is executed before the next statement is evaluated and executed. In [Example B-16](#), the swap is accomplished with nonblocking assignments.

**Example B-15 Swap Problem Using Blocking Assignments**

```

always @(posedge clk)
begin
    x = y;
    y = x;
end

```

**Example B-16 Swap Accomplished With Nonblocking Assignments**

```

always @(posedge clk)
    x <= y;
    y <= x;

```

---

## Macromodule

HDL Compiler treats the macromodule construct as a module construct. Whether you use module or macromodule, the synthesis results are the same.

---

## inout Port Declaration

HDL Compiler allows you to connect inout ports only to module or gate instantiations. You must declare an inout before you use it.

---

## tri Data Type

The tri data type allows multiple three-state devices to drive a wire. When inferring three-state devices, you need to ensure that all the drivers are inferred as three-state devices and that all inputs to a device are z, except the one variable driving the three-state device which will have a 1.

---

## HDL Compiler Directives

HDL compiler directives are discussed in the following sections:

- ``define`
- ``include`
- ``ifdef`, ``else`, ``endif`, ``ifndef`, and ``elsif`
- ``rp_group` and ``rp_endgroup`
- ``rp_place`
- ``rp_fill`
- ``rp_array_dir`
- `rp_align`
- `rp_orient`
- `rp_ignore` and `rp_endignore`
- ``undef`

### ``define`

The ``define` directive can specify macros that take arguments. For example,

```
`define BYTE_TO_BITS(arg)((arg) << 3)
```

The ``define` directive can do more than simple text substitution. It can also take arguments and substitute their values in its replacement text.

Macro substitution assigns a string of text to a macro variable. The string of text is inserted into the code where the macro is encountered. The definition begins with the back quotation mark (```), followed by the keyword `define`, followed by the name of the macro variable. All text from the macro variable until the end of the line is assigned to the macro variable.

You can declare and use macro variables anywhere in the description. The definitions can carry across several files that are read into Design Compiler at the same time. To make a macro substitution, type a back quotation mark ( ` ) followed by the macro variable name.

Some sample macro variable declarations are shown in [Example B-17](#).

**Example B-17 Macro Variable Declarations**

```
`define highbits      31:29
`define bitlist       {first, second, third}
wire [31:0] bus;
`bitlist = bus[`highbits];
```

The `analyze -define` command allows macro definition on the command line. Only one `-define` per `analyze` command is allowed but the argument can be a list of macros, as shown in [Example B-18](#).

**Note:**

When using the `-define` option with multiple `analyze` commands, you must remove any designs in memory before analyzing the design again. To remove the designs, use `remove_design -all`. Because elaborated designs in memory have no timestamps, the tool cannot determine whether the analyzed file has been updated or not. The tool might assume that the previously elaborated design is up-to-date and reuse it.

Curly brackets are not required to enclose one macro, as shown in [Example B-19](#). However, if the argument is a list of macros, curly brackets are required.

**Example B-18 analyze Command With List of Defines**

```
analyze -f verilog -define { RIPPLE, SIMPLE } mydesign.v
```

**Example B-19 analyze Command With One Define**

```
analyze -f verilog -define ONLY_ONE mydesign.v
```

**Note:**

In `dtcl` mode, the `read_verilog` command does not accept the `-define` option.

See also [“Predefined Macros” on page 1-20](#).

## **`include**

The ``include` construct in Verilog is similar to the `#include` directive in the C language. You can use this construct to include Verilog code, such as type declarations and functions, from one module in another module. [Example B-20](#) shows an application of the ``include` construct.

**Example B-20 Including a File Within a File**

```

Contents of file1.v
`define WORDSIZE 8

function [`WORDSIZE-1:0] fastadder;
    input [`WORDSIZE-1:0] fin1, fin2;
    fastadder = fin1 + fin2;
endfunction

Contents of file2.v
module secondfile (clk, in1, in2, out);

    `include "file1.v"
    . . .
    wire [`WORDSIZE-1:0] temp;
    assign temp = fastadder (in1,in2);
    . . .
endmodule

```

Included files can include other files, with up to 24 levels of nesting. You cannot use the ``include` construct recursively.

When your design contains multiple files for multiple subblocks and include files for sub-blocks, in their respective sub directories, you can elaborate the top-level design without making any changes to the search path. The tool will automatically find the include files. For example, if your structure is as follows:

```

Rtl/top.v
Rtl/sub_module1/sub_module1.v
Rtl/sub_module2/sub_module2.v
Rtl/sub_module1/sub_module1_inc.v
Rtl/sub_module2/sub_module2_inc.v

```

You do not need to add `Rtl/sub_module1/` and `Rtl/sub_module2/` to your search path to enable the tool to find the include files `sub_module1_inc.v` and `sub_module2_inc.v` when you elaborate `top.v`.

**``ifdef`, ``else`, ``endif`, ``ifndef`, and ``elsif`**

These directives allow the conditional inclusion of code.

- The ``ifdef` directive executes the statements following it if the indicated macro is defined; if the macro is not defined, the statements after ``else` are executed.
- The ``ifndef` directive executes the statements following it if the indicated macro is not defined; if the macro is defined, the statements after ``else` are executed.
- The ``elsif` directive allows one level of nesting and is equivalent to the ``else `ifdef ... `endif` directive sequence.

[Example B-21](#) illustrates usage. Use the ``define` directive to define the macros that are arguments to the ``ifdef` directive; see [“define” on page B-17](#).

*Example B-21 Design Using `ifdef...`else...`endif Directives*

```
`ifdef SELECT_XOR_DESIGN
module selective_design(a,b,c);
  input a, b;
  output c;
  assign c = a ^ b;
endmodule

`else

module selective_design(a,b,c);
  input a, b;
  output c;
  assign c = a | b;
endmodule
`endif
```

## **``rp_group` and ``rp_endgroup`**

The ``rp_group` and ``rp_endgroup` directives allow you to specify a relative placement group. All cell instances declared between the directives are members of the specified group. These directives are available for RTL designs and netlist designs.

The Verilog syntax for RTL designs is as follows:

```
`rp_group ( group_name {num_cols num_rows} )
`rp_endgroup ( {group_name} )
```

Use the following syntax for netlist designs:

```
//synopsys rp_group ( group_name {num_cols num_rows} )
//synopsys rp_endgroup ( {group_name} )
```

For more information and an example, see [“Specifying Relative Placement Groups” on page 2-4](#).

## **``rp_place`**

The ``rp_place` directive allows you to specify a subgroup at a specific hierarchy, a keepout region, or an instance to be placed in the current relative placement group. When you use the ``rp_place` directive to specify a subgroup at a specific hierarchy, you must instantiate the subgroup’s instances outside of any group declarations in the module. This directive is available for RTL designs and netlist designs.

The Verilog syntax for RTL designs is as follows:

```
`rp_place ( hier group_name col row )
```



```
`rp_place ( keep keepout_name col row width height )
`rp_place ({leaf} [inst_name] col row )
```

Use the following syntax for netlist designs:

```
//synopsys rp_place ( hier group_name col row )
//synopsys rp_place ( hier group_name [inst_name] col row )
//synopsys rp_place ({leaf} [inst_name] col row )
//synopsys rp_place ( keep keepout_name col row width height )
```

For more information and examples, see [“Specifying Subgroups, Keepouts, and Instances” on page 2-5](#).

## **`rp\_fill**

The ``rp_fill` directive automatically places the cells at the location specified by a pointer. Each time a new instance is declared that is not explicitly placed, it is inserted into the grid at the location indicated by the current value of the pointer. After the instance is placed, the pointer is updated incrementally and the process is ready to be repeated. This directive is available for RTL designs and netlist designs.

The ``rp_fill` arguments define how the pointer is updated. The `col` and `row` parameters specify the initial coordinates of the pointer. These parameters can represent absolute row or column locations in the group’s grid or locations that are relative to the current pointer value. To represent locations relative to the current pointer, enclose the column and row values in angle brackets (<>). For example, assume the current pointer location is (3,4). In this case, specifying `rp_fill <1> 0` initializes the pointer to (4,0) and that is where the next instance is placed. Absolute coordinates must be nonnegative integers; relative coordinates can be any integer.

The Verilog syntax for RTL designs is as follows:

```
`rp_fill ( {col row} {pattern pat} )
```

Use the following syntax for netlist designs:

```
//synopsys rp_fill ( col row {pattern pat} )
```

For more information and an example, see [“Enabling Automatic Cell Placement” on page 2-6](#).

## **`rp\_array\_dir**

Note:

This directive is available for creating relative placement in RTL designs but not in netlist designs.

The ``rp_array_dir` directive specifies whether the elements of an array are placed upward, from the least significant bit to the most significant bit, or downward, from the most significant bit to the least significant bit.

The Verilog syntax for RTL designs is as follows:

```
`rp_array_dir ( up|down )
```

For more information and an example, see [“Specifying Placement for Array Elements” on page 2-7](#).

## rp\_align

The `rp_align` directive explicitly specifies the alignment of the placed instance within the grid cell when the instance is smaller than the cell. If you specify the optional `inst` instance name argument, the alignment applies only to that instance; however, if you do not specify an instance, the new alignment applies to all subsequent instantiations within the group until HDL Compiler encounters another `rp_align` directive. If the instance straddles cells, the alignment takes place within the straddled region. The alignment value is `sw` (southwest) by default. The instance is snapped to legal row and routing grid coordinates.

Use the following syntax for netlist designs:

```
//synopsys rp_align ( n|s|e|w|nw|sw|ne|se|pin=name { inst } )
```

Note:

This directive is available for creating relative placement in netlist designs only.

For more information and an example, see [“Specifying Cell Alignment” on page 2-8](#).

## rp\_orient

Note:

This directive is available for creating relative placement in netlist designs only.

The `rp_orient` directive allows you to control the orientation of library cells placed in the current group. When you specify a list of possible orientations, HDL Compiler chooses the first legal orientation for the cell.

Use the following syntax for netlist designs:

```
//synopsys rp_orient ( {N|W|S|E|FN|FW|FS|FE}* { inst } )
//synopsys
rp_orient ( {N|W|S|E|FN|FW|FS|FE}* { group_name inst } )
```

For more information and an example, see [“Specifying Cell Orientation” on page 2-8](#).

## rp\_ignore and rp\_endignore

Note:

This directive is available for creating relative placement in netlist designs only.

The `rp_ignore` and `rp_endignore` directives allow you to ignore specified lines in the input file. Any lines between the two directives are omitted from relative placement. The `include` and `define` directives, variable substitution, and cell mapping are not ignored.

The `rp_ignore` and `rp_endignore` directives allow you to include the instantiation of submodules in a relative placement group close to the `rp_place hier group(inst)` location to place relative placement array.

Use the following syntax for netlist designs:

```
//synopsys rp_ignore
//synopsys rp_endignore
```

For more information and an example, see [“Ignoring Relative Placement” on page 2-9](#).

## `undef

The ``undef` directive resets the macro immediately following it.

---

## reg Types

The Verilog language requires that any value assigned inside an always statement must be declared as a reg type. HDL Compiler returns an error if any value assigned inside an always block is not declared as a reg type.

---

## Types in Busing

Design Compiler maintains types throughout a design, including types for buses (vectors). [Example B-22](#) shows a Verilog design read into HDL Compiler containing a bit vector that is NOTed into another bit vector.

### Example B-22 Bit Vector in Verilog

```
module test_busing_1 ( a, b );
  input  [3:0] a;
  output [3:0] b;

  assign b = ~a;
endmodule
```

**Example B-23** shows the same description written out by HDL Compiler. The description contains the original Verilog types of ports. Internal nets do not maintain their original bus types. Also, the NOT operation is instantiated as single bits.

*Example B-23 Bit Blasting*

```
module test_busing_2 ( a, b );
  input  [3:0] a;
  output [3:0] b;
  assign b[0] = ~a[0];
  assign b[1] = ~a[1];
  assign b[2] = ~a[2];
  assign b[3] = ~a[3];
endmodule
```

---

## Combinational while Loops

To create a combinational while loop, write the code so that an upper bound on the number of loop iterations can be determined. The loop iterative bound must be statically determinable; otherwise an error is reported.

HDL Compiler needs to be able to determine an upper bound on the number of trips through the loop at compile time. In HDL Compiler, there are no syntax restrictions on the loops; while loops that have no events within them, such as in the following example, are supported.

```
input [9:0] a;
// ....
i = 0;
while ( i < 10 && !a[i] ) begin
  i = i + 1;
  // loop body
end
```

To support this loop, HDL Compiler interprets it like a simulator. The tool stops when the loop termination condition is known to be false. Because HDL Compiler can't determine when a loop is infinite, it stops and reports an error after an arbitrary (but user defined) number of iterations (the default is 1024).

To exit the loop, HDL Compiler allows additional conditions in the loop condition that permit more concise descriptions.

```
for (i = 0; i < 10 && a[i]; i = i+1) begin
  // loop body
end
```

A loop must unconditionally make progress toward termination in each trip through the loop, or it cannot be compiled. The following example makes progress (that is, increments i) only when !done is true and will not terminate.

```

while ( i < 10 ) begin
  if ( ! done )
    done = a[i];
    // loop body
    i = i + 1;
  end
end

```

The following modified version, which unconditionally increments *i*, will terminate. This code creates the desired logic.

```

while ( i < 10 ) begin
  if ( ! done ) begin
    done = a[i];
    end// loop body
    i = i + 1;
  end
end

```

In the next example, loop termination depends on reading values stored in *x*. If the value is unknown (as in the first and third iterations), HDL Compiler assumes it might be true and generates logic to test it.

```

x[0] = v;          // Value unknown: implies "if(v)"
x[1] = 1;          // Known TRUE: no guard on 2nd trip
x[2] = w;          // Not known: implies "if(w)"
x[3] = 0;          // Known FALSE: stop the loop

i = 0;
while( x[i] ) begin
  // loop body
  i = i + 1;
end

```

This code terminates after three iterations when the loop tests *x*[3], which contains 0.

In [Example B-24](#), a supported combinational while loop, the code produces gates, and an event control signal is not necessary.

**Example B-24 Supported while Loop Code**

```

module modified_s2 (a, b, z);
parameter N = 3;
input [N:0] a, b;
output [N:1] z;
reg [N:1] z;
integer i;
always @(a or b or z)
begin
    i = N;
    while (i)
    begin
        z[i] = b[i] + a[i-1];
        i = i - 1;
    end
end
endmodule

```

In [Example B-25](#), a supported combinational while loop, no matter what *x* is, the loop will run for 16 iterations at most because HDL Compiler can keep track of which bits of *x* are constant. Even though it doesn't know the initial value of *x*, it does know that *x* >> 1 has a zero in the most significant bit (MSB). The next time *x* is shifted right, it knows that *x* has two zeros in the MSB, and so on. HDL Compiler can determine when *x* becomes all zeros.

**Example B-25 Supported Combinational while Loop**

```

module while_loop_comb1(x, count);
input [7:0] x;
output [2:0] count;
reg [7:0] temp;
reg [2:0] count;
always @ (x)
begin
    temp = x;
    count = 0;
    while (temp != 0)
    begin
        count = count + 1;
        temp = temp >> 1;
    end
end
endmodule

```

In [Example B-26](#), a supported combinational while loop, HDL Compiler knows the initial value of *x* and can determine *x*+1 and all subsequent values of *x*.

**Example B-26 Supported Combinational while Loop**

```

module while_loop_comb2(y, count1, z);
  input [3:0] y, count1; output [3:0] z;
  reg [3:0] x, z, count;
  always @ (y, count1)
  begin
    x = 2;
    count = count1;
    while (x < 15)
      begin
        count = count + 1;
        x = x + 1;
      end
    z = count;
  end
endmodule

```

In [Example B-27](#), HDL Compiler cannot detect the initial value of i and so cannot support this while loop. [Example B-28](#) is supported because i is determinable.

**Example B-27 Unsupported Combinational while Loop**

```

module my_loop1 #(parameter N=4) (input [N:0] in, output reg [2*N:0] out);
  reg [N:0] i;
  always @* begin
    i = in;
    out = 0 ;
    while (i>0) begin
      out = out + i;
      i = i - 1;
    end
  end
endmodule

```

**Example B-28 Supported Combinational while Loop**

```

module my_loop2 #(parameter N=4) (input [N:0] in, output reg [2*N:0] out);
  reg [N:0] i;
  reg [N+1:0] j;
  always @*
  for (j = 0 ; j < (2<<N) ; j = j+1 )
    if (j==in) begin
      i = j;
      out = 0 ;
      while (i>0) begin
        out = out + i;
        i = i - 1;
      end
    end
  end
endmodule

```

## Verilog 2001 and 2005 Supported Constructs

[Table B-3](#) lists the Verilog 2001 and 2005 features implemented by HDL Compiler. For additional information about these features, see IEEE Std 1364-2001.

*Table B-3 Supported Verilog 2001 and 2005 Constructs*

Feature	Description
Automatic tasks and functions	Fully supported
Constant functions	Fully supported
Local parameter	Fully supported
generate statement	See <a href="#">“generate Statements” on page B-6</a> .
SYNTHESIS macro	Fully supported
Implicit net declarations for continuous assignments	Fully supported
`line directive	Fully supported
ANSI-C-style port declarations	Fully supported
Casting operators	Fully supported
Parameter passing by name (IEEE 12.2.2.2)	Fully supported
Implicit event expression list (IEEE 9.7.5)	Fully supported
ANSI-C-style port declaration (IEEE 12.3.3)	Fully supported
Signed/unsigned parameters (IEEE 3.11)	Fully supported
Signed/unsigned nets and registers (IEEE 3.2, 4.3)	Fully supported
Signed/unsigned sized and based constants (IEEE 3.2)	Fully supported



*Table B-3 Supported Verilog 2001 and 2005 Constructs (Continued)*

Feature	Description
Multidimensional arrays and arrays of nets (IEEE 3.10)	Fully supported
Part select addressing ([+:] and [-:] operators) (IEEE 4.2.1)	Fully supported
Power operator (**) (IEEE 4.1.5)	Fully supported
Arithmetic shift operators (<<< and >>>) (IEEE 4.1.12)	Fully supported
Sized parameters (IEEE 3.11.1)	Fully supported
`ifndef, `elsif, `undef (IEEE 19.4, 19.3.2)	Fully supported
`ifdef VERILOG_2001 and `ifdef VERILOG_1995	Fully supported
Comma-separated sensitivity lists (IEEE 4.1.15 and 9.7.4)	Fully supported

## Ignored Constructs

The following sections include directives that HDL Compiler accepts but ignores.

### Simulation Directives

The following directives are special commands that affect the operation of the Verilog HDL simulator:

```
'accelerate
'celldefine
'default_nettype
'endcelldefine
'endprotect
'expand_vectornets
'noaccelerate
'noexpand_vectornets
'noremove_netnames
'nounconnected_drive
'protect
```

```
'remove_netnames  
'resetall  
'timescale  
'unconnected_drive
```

You can include these directives in your design description; HDL Compiler accepts but ignores them.

---

## Verilog System Functions

Verilog system functions are special functions that Verilog HDL simulators implement. Their names start with a dollar sign (\$). All of these functions are accepted but ignored by HDL Compiler with the exception of \$display, which can be useful during synthesis elaboration. See [“Use of \\$display During RTL Elaboration” on page 1-23](#).

---

## Verilog 2001 Feature Examples

This section provides examples for Verilog 2001 features in the following sections:

- [Multidimensional Arrays and Arrays of Nets](#)
- [Signed Quantities](#)
- [Comparisons With Signed Types](#)
- [Controlling Signs With Casting Operators](#)
- [Part-Select Addressing Operators \(\[+:\] and \[-:\]\)](#)
- [Power Operator \(\\*\\*\)](#)
- [Arithmetic Shift Operators \(<<< and >>>\)](#)

---

## Multidimensional Arrays and Arrays of Nets

HDL Compiler supports multidimensional arrays of any variable or net data type. This added functionality is shown in examples B-29 through B-32.

**Example B-29** *Multidimensional Arrays*

```

module m (a, z);
  input [7:0] a;
  output z;
  reg t [0:3][0:7];
  integer i, j;
  integer k;
  always @(a)
    begin
      for (j = 0; j < 8; j = j + 1)
        begin
          t[0][j] = a[j];
        end
      for (i = 1; i < 4; i = i + 1)
        begin
          k = 1 << (3-i);
          for (j = 0; j < k; j = j + 1)
            begin
              t[i][j] = t[i-1][2*j] ^ t[i-1][2*j+1];
            end
          end
        end
      end
    assign z = t[3][0];
endmodule

```

**Example B-30** *Arrays of Nets*

```

module m (a, z);
  input [0:3] a;
  output z;
  wire x [0:2] ;
  assign x[0] = a[0] ^ a[1];
  assign x[1] = a[2] ^ a[3];
  assign x[2] = x[0] ^ x[1];
  assign z = x[2];
endmodule

```

**Example B-31** *Multidimensional Array Variable Subscripting*

```

reg [7:0] X [0:7][0:7][0:7];

assign out = X[a][b][c][d+:4];

```

Verilog 2001 allows more than one level of subscripting on a variable, without use of a temporary variable.

**Example B-32 Multidimensional Array**

```

module test(in, en, out, addr_in, addr_out_reg, addr_out_bit, clk);

    input [7:0] in;
    input en, clk;
    input [2:0] addr_in, addr_out_reg, addr_out_bit;
    reg [7:0] MEM [0:7];
    output out;

    assign out = MEM[addr_out_reg][addr_out_bit];

    always @(posedge clk) if (en) MEM[addr_in] = in;
endmodule

```

---

## Signed Quantities

HDL Compiler supports signed arithmetic extensions. Function returns and reg and net data types can be declared as signed. This added functionality is shown in examples B-33 through B-38.

[Example B-33](#) results in a sign extension, that is, z[0] connects to a[0].

**Example B-33 Signed I/O Ports**

```

module m1 (a, z);
    input signed [0:3] a;
    output signed [0:4] z;
    assign z = a;
endmodule

```

In [Example B-34](#), because 3'sb111 is signed, the tool infers a signed adder. In the generic netlist, the ADD\_TC\_OP cell denotes a 2's complement adder and z[0] will not be logic 0.

**Example B-34 Signed Constants: Code and GTECH Gates**

```

module m2 (a, z);
    input signed [0:2] a;
    output [0:4] z;
    assign z = a + 3'sb111;
endmodule

```

In [Example B-35](#), because 4'sd5 is signed, a signed comparator (LT\_TC\_OP) is inferred.

**Example B-35 Signed Registers: Code and GTECH Gates**

```

module m3 (a, z);
    input [0:3] a;
    output z;
    reg signed [0:3] x;
    reg z;
    always begin

```

```

    x = a;
    z = x < 4'sd5;
end
endmodule

```

In [Example B-36](#), because in1, in2, and out are signed, a signed multiplier (MULT\_TC\_OP\_8\_8\_8) is inferred.

#### *Example B-36 Signed Types: Code and Gates*

```

module m4 (in1, in2, out);
    input  signed [7:0] in1, in2;
    output signed [7:0] out;
    assign out = in1 * in2;
endmodule

```

The code in [Example B-37](#) results in a signed subtractor (SUB\_TC\_OP).

#### *Example B-37 Signed Nets: Code and Gates*

```

module m5 (a, b, z);
    input  [1:0] a, b;
    output [2:0] z;
    wire signed [1:0] x = a;
    wire signed [1:0] y = b;
    assign z = x - y;
endmodule

```

In [Example B-38](#), because 4'sd5 is signed, a signed comparator (LT\_TC\_OP) is inferred.

#### *Example B-38 Signed Values*

```

module m6 (a, z);
    input [3:0] a;
    output z;
    reg signed [3:0] x;
    wire z;
    always @(a) begin
        x = a;
    end
    assign z = x < -4'sd5;
endmodule

```

Verilog 2001 adds the signed keyword in declarations:

```
reg signed [7:0] x;
```

It also adds support for signed, sized constants. For example, 8'sb11111111 is an 8-bit signed quantity representing -1. If you are assigning it to a variable that is 8 bits or less, 8'sb11111111 is the same as the unsigned 8'b11111111. A behavior difference arises when the variable being assigned to is larger than the constant. This difference occurs because signed quantities are extended with the high-order bit of the constant, whereas unsigned

quantities are extended with 0s. When used in expressions, the sign of the constant helps determine whether the operation is performed as signed or unsigned.

HDL Compiler enables signed types by default.

Note:

If you use the `signed` keyword, any signed constant in your code, or explicit type casting between signed and unsigned types, HDL Compiler issues a warning.

---

## Comparisons With Signed Types

Verilog sign rules are tricky. All inputs to an expression must be signed to obtain a signed operator. If one is signed and one unsigned, both are treated as unsigned. Any unsigned quantity in an expression makes the whole expression unsigned; the result doesn't depend on the sign of the left side. Some expressions always produce an unsigned result; these include bit and part-select and concatenation. See IEEE P1364/P5 Section 4.5.1.

You need to control the sign of the inputs yourself if you want to compare a signed quantity against an unsigned one. The same is true for other kinds of expressions. See [Example B-39](#) and [Example B-40](#).

### *Example B-39 Unsigned Comparison Results When Signs Are Mismatched*

```
module m8 (in1, in2, lt);
// in1 is signed but in2 is unsigned
  input signed [7:0] in1;
  input      [7:0] in2;
  output lt;
  wire uns_lt, uns_in1_lt_64;
/* comparison is unsigned because of the sign mismatch, in1
is signed but in2 is unsigned */
  assign uns_lt = in1 < in2;
/* Unsigned constant causes unsigned comparison; so negative
values of in1 would compare as larger than 8'd64 */
  assign uns_in1_lt_64 = in1 < 8'd64;
  assign lt = uns_lt + uns_in1_lt_64;
endmodule
```

### *Example B-40 Signed Values*

```
module m7 (in1, in2, lt, in1_lt_64);
  input signed [7:0] in1, in2; // two signed inputs
  output lt, in1_lt_64;
  assign lt = in1 < in2; // comparison is signed
  // using a signed constant results in a signed comparison
  assign in1_lt_64 = in1 < 8'sd64;
endmodule
```

---

## Controlling Signs With Casting Operators

Use the Verilog 2001 casting operators, `$signed()` and `$unsigned()`, to convert an unsigned expression to a signed expression. In [Example B-41](#), the casting operator is used to obtain a signed comparator. Note that simply marking an expression as signed might give undesirable results because the unsigned value might be interpreted as a negative number. To avoid this problem, zero-extend unsigned quantities, as shown in [Example B-41](#).

### Example B-41 Casting Operators

```
module m9 (in1, in2, lt);
    input signed [7:0] in1;
    input          [7:0] in2;
    output lt;
    assign lt = in1 < $signed ({1'b0, in2});
    //Cast to get signed comparator.
    //Zero-extend to preserve interpretation of unsigned value as positive
    number.
```

---

## Part-Select Addressing Operators ([+:] and [-:])

Verilog 2001 introduced variable part-select operators. These operators allow you to use variables to select a group of bits from a vector. In some designs, coding with part-select operators improves elaboration time and memory usage.

Variable part-select operators are discussed in the following sections:

- [Variable Part-Select Overview](#)
- [Example—Ascending Array and +:](#)
- [Example—Ascending Array and -:](#)
- [Example—Descending Array and the -: Operator](#)
- [Example—Descending Array and the +: Operator](#)

## Variable Part-Select Overview

A Verilog 1995 part-select operator requires that both upper and lower indexes be constant: `a[2:3]` or `a[value1:value2]`.

The variable part-select operator permits selection of a fixed-width group of bits at a variable base address and takes the following form:

- `[base_expr +: width_expr]` for a positive offset
- `[base_expr -: width_expr]` for a negative offset

The syntax specifies a variable base address and a known constant number of bits to be extracted. The base address is always written on the left, regardless of the declared direction of the array. The language allows variable part-select on the left-hand side (LHS) and the right-hand side (RHS) of an expression. All of the following expressions are allowed:

- `data_out = array_expn[index_var +: 3]`  
(part select is on the right-hand side)
- `data_out = array_expn[index_var -: 3]`  
(part select is on the right-hand side)
- `array_expn[index_var +: 3] = data_in`  
(part select is on the left-hand side)
- `array_expn[index_var -: 3] = data_in`  
(part select is on the left-hand side)

This table shows examples of Verilog 2001 syntax and the equivalent Verilog 1995 syntax.

Verilog 2001 syntax	Equivalent Verilog 1995 syntax	
<code>a[x +: 3]</code> for a descending array	<code>{ a[x+2], a[x+1], a[x] }</code>	<code>a[x+2 : x]</code>
<code>a[x -: 3]</code> for a descending array	<code>{ a[x], a[x-1], a[x-2] }</code>	<code>a[x : x-2]</code>
<code>a[x +: 3]</code> for an ascending array	<code>{ a[x], a[x+1], a[x+2] }</code>	<code>a[x : x+2]</code>
<code>a[x -: 3]</code> for an ascending array	<code>{ a[x-2], a[x-1], a[x] }</code>	<code>a[x-2 : x]</code>

The original HDL Compiler tool allows nonconstant part-selects if the width is constant; HDL Compiler permits only the new syntax.

### Example—Ascending Array and -:

The following Verilog code uses the `-:` operator to select bits from `Ascending_Array`.

```
reg [0:7] Ascending_Array;
...
Data_Out = Ascending_Array[Index_Var -: 3];
```



The value of `Index_Var` determines the starting point for the bits selected. In the following table, the bits selected are shown as a function of `Index_Var`.

<b>Ascending_Array</b>	<b>[</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>]</b>
Index_Var = 0	not valid, synthesis/simulation mismatch									
Index_Var = 1	not valid, synthesis/simulation mismatch									
Index_Var = 2		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
Index_Var = 3		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
Index_Var = 4		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
Index_Var = 5		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
Index_Var = 6		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
Index_Var = 7		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	

`Ascending_Array[Index_Var -: 3]` is functionally equivalent to the following part-select that is not computable:

`Ascending_Array[Index_Var - 2 : Index_Var]`

### Example—Ascending Array and +:

The following Verilog code uses the `+:` operator to select bits from `Ascending_Array`.

```
reg [0:7] Ascending_Array;
...
Data_Out = Ascending_Array[Index_Var +: 3];
```

The value of `Index_Var` determines the starting point for the bits selected. In the following table, the bits selected are shown as a function of `Index_Var`.

<b>Ascending_Array</b>	<b>[</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>]</b>
Index_Var = 0		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
Index_Var = 1		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	

<b>Ascending_Array</b>	<b>[</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>]</b>
Index_Var = 2		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
Index_Var = 3		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
Index_Var = 4		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
Index_Var = 5		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
Index_Var = 6	not valid, synthesis/simulation mismatch; see the following note.									
Index_Var = 7	not valid, synthesis/simulation mismatch; see the following note.									

Note:

- Ascending\_Array[Index\_Var +: 3] is functionally equivalent to the following part-select that is not computable: Ascending\_Array[Index\_Var : Index\_Var + 2]
- Noncomputable part-selects are not supported by the Verilog language. Ascending\_Array[7 +:3] corresponds to elements Ascending\_Array[7 : 9] but elements Ascending\_Array[8] and Ascending\_Array[9] do not exist. A variable part-select must always compute to a valid index; otherwise, a synthesis elaborate error and a runtime simulation error will result.

## Example—Descending Array and the -: Operator

The following code uses the -: operator to select bits from Descending\_Array.

```
reg [7:0] Descending_Array;
...
Data_Out = Descending_Array[Index_Var -: 3];
```

The value of Index\_Var determines the starting point for the bits selected. In the following table, the bits selected are shown as a function of Index\_Var.

<b>Descending_Array</b>	<b>[</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>]</b>
Index_Var = 0	not valid, synthesis/simulation mismatch									
Index_Var = 1	not valid, synthesis/simulation mismatch									
Index_Var = 2		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
Index_Var = 3		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	

<b>Descending_Array</b>	<b>[ 7</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>0 ]</b>
Index_Var = 4	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Index_Var = 5	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Index_Var = 6	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Index_Var = 7	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•

Descending\_Array[Index\_Var -: 3] is functionally equivalent to the following noncomputable part-select:

Descending\_Array[Index\_Var : Index\_Var - 2]

### Example—Descending Array and the +: Operator

The following Verilog code uses the +: operator to select bits from Descending\_Array.

```
reg [7:0] Descending_Array;
...
Data_Out = Descending_Array[Index_Var +: 3];
```

The value of Index\_Var determines the starting point for the bits selected. In the following table, the bits selected are shown as a function of Index\_Var.

<b>Descending_Array</b>	<b>[ 7</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>0 ]</b>
Index_Var = 0	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Index_Var = 1	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Index_Var = 2	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Index_Var = 3	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Index_Var = 4	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Index_Var = 5	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Index_Var = 6	not valid, synthesis/simulation mismatch							

Descending_Array	[	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	]
Index_Var = 7	not valid, synthesis/simulation mismatch									

Descending\_Array[Index\_Var +: 3] is functionally equivalent to the following noncomputable part-select:

Descending\_Array[Index\_Var + 2 : Index\_Var]

Noncomputable part-selects are not supported by the Verilog language.

Descending\_Array[7 +:3] corresponds to elements Descending\_Array[9 : 7] but elements Descending\_Array[9] and Descending\_Array[8] do not exist. A variable part-select must always compute to a valid index; otherwise, a synthesis elaborate error and a runtime simulation error will result.

---

## Power Operator (\*\*)

This operator performs  $y^x$ , as shown in [Example B-42](#).

### Example B-42 Power Operators

```
module m #(parameter b=2, c=4) (a, x, y, z);
  input [3:0] a;
  output [7:0] x, y, z;

  assign z = 2 ** a;
  assign x = a ** 2;
  assign y = b ** c; // where b and c are constants
endmodule
```

---

## Arithmetic Shift Operators (<<< and >>>)

The arithmetic shift operators allow you to shift an expression and still maintain the sign of a value, as shown in [Example B-43](#). When the type of the result is signed, the arithmetic shift operator (>>>) shifts in the sign bit; otherwise it shifts in zeros.

**Example B-43 Shift Operator Code and Gates**

```

module s1 (A, S, Q);
    input signed [3:0] A;
    input [1:0] S;
    output [3:0] Q;
    reg [3:0] Q;
    always @(A or S)
    begin

        // arithmetic shift right,
        // shifts in sign-bit from left

        Q = A >>> S;
    end
endmodule

```

---

## Verilog 2005 Feature Example

---

### Zero Replication

According to the Verilog 2005 LRM, a replication operation with a zero replication constant is considered to have a size of zero and is ignored. Such an operation can appear only within a concatenation in which at least one of the operands of the concatenation has a positive size.

Zero replication can be useful for parameterized designs. In the following example, the valid values for parameter P are 1 to 32.

```

module top #(parameter P = 32) ( input [32-1:0]a, output [32-1:0] b);
    assign b = {{32-P{1'b1}}, a[P-1:0]};
endmodule

```

When `hdlin_vrlg_std` is set to 2005, and you analyze replication operations whose elaboration-time constant is zero or negative, the repeated expressions elaborate once (for their side-effects). But they do not contribute result values to a surrounding concatenation or assignment pattern. The Verilog 2005 standard permits such empty replication results only within an otherwise nonempty concatenation

**Note:**

Nonstandard replication operations that are analyzed when the `hdlin_vrlg_std` variable is set to 1995 or 2001 return 1'b0. This is compatible with an extension made by Synopsys Verilog products of that era.

## Configurations

You can use configurations to specify binding information of module instances down to the cell level in the design. The configurations can be analyzed and elaborated by the `analyze` and `elaborate` commands respectively. For example,

```
dc_shell> analyze -f verilog {submodule.v ...}
dc_shell> analyze -f verilog top_module.v
dc_shell> analyze -f verilog config_file.v
dc_shell> elaborate my_config_of_design
```

By default, the HDL Compiler tool resolves lower module instances by applying a design library search order taken from the `dc_shell` environment and the analyzed parent module. Alternatively, you can specify design library locations (bindings) for module or interface instances of a specific design in configurations by using the `config` element. All bindings in the design hierarchy are constrained by the configuration rules given in the `config_rule` subset in the configuration.

The following configuration syntax is supported for synthesis:

```
config config_id;
  design {[lib_id .] design_id};
  {config_rule}
endconfig [: config_id]
```

where

```
config_rule ::= default liblist {lib_id};
              | instance design_id { . inst_id } liblist lib_id;

design_id ::= module_id | interface_id
```

For more information about the syntax, see the IEEE Std 1800-2012.

The following limitations apply when you use configurations:

- Only one library is allowed for instances.
- Only one default rule is allowed.
- Library declarations are not allowed.  
To define libraries, use the `define_design_lib` command. Design library names in `dc_shell` are not case-sensitive.
- The `read_file` command and the `-autoread` option do not support configurations.
- Configuration rules do not affect the bindings of designs that are already elaborated or loaded in memory.

---

## Configuration Examples

The following topics provide examples on how to use configuration rules and designs:

- [Default Statement](#)
- [Instance Bindings](#)
- [Multiple Top-Level Designs](#)

The examples use these low-level modules:

- **sub1.v**

```
module sub1(
    input i1, i2,
    output o1
);
assign o1 = i1 & i2;
endmodule
```
- **sub2.v**

```
module sub1(
    input i1, i2,
    output o1
);
assign o1 = i1 | i2;
endmodule
```
- **sub3.v**

```
module sub1(
    input i1, i2,
    output o1
);
assign o1 = i1 ^ i2;
endmodule
```

Note:

The three low-level files use the same sub1 module name, but they implement different functions. The sub1.v, sbu2.v, and sub3.v files implement AND, OR, and XOR functions respectively.

---

## Default Statement

The following example uses a configuration to direct the tool to choose the implementation of the instances in the top-level module. The configuration file specifies the default statement, but no binding information.

- Top-level top.v file

```
module top(
    input i1, i2, i3, i4,
    output o1, o2, o3
);
    sub1 U1 (i1, i2, o1);
    sub1 U2 (o1, i3, o2);
    sub1 U3 (o2, i4, o3);
endmodule
```

- Configuration file

```
config cfg1;
design rtlLib.top;
default liblist rtlLib;
endconfig
```

- Design Compiler Tcl script

```
define_design_lib lib1 -path ./lib1
define_design_lib lib2 -path ./lib2
define_design_lib rtlLib -path ./rtlLib
analyze -f verilog -library lib1 sub1.v
analyze -f verilog -library lib2 sub2.v
analyze -f verilog -library rtlLib sub3.v
analyze -f verilog -library rtlLib top.v
analyze -f verilog config.v
elaborate cfg1
```

- Netlist

The output netlist shows that the sub1 module analyzed in the rtlLib library is chosen for the instantiations in the top module.

```
module sub1 ( i1, i2, o1 );
    input i1, i2;
    output o1;
    GTECH_XOR2 C7 ( .A(i1), .B(i2), .Z(o1) );
endmodule

module top ( i1, i2, i3, i4, o1, o2, o3 );
    input i1, i2, i3, i4;
    output o1, o2, o3;
    sub1 U1 ( .i1(i1), .i2(i2), .o1(o1) );
    sub1 U2 ( .i1(o1), .i2(i3), .o1(o2) );
    sub1 U3 ( .i1(o2), .i2(i4), .o1(o3) );
endmodule
```



---

## Instance Bindings

The following example shows how to use instance bindings in configurations. The configuration file specifies the binding of each instance of the sub1 module, but no default statement.

- Top-level top.2 file

```
module top(  
    input i1, i2, i3, i4,  
    output o1, o2, o3  
);  
    sub1 U1 (i1, i2, o1);  
    sub1 U2 (o1, i3, o2);  
    sub1 U3 (o2, i4, o3);  
endmodule
```

- Configuration file

```
config cfg1;  
design rtlLib.top;  
instance top.U1 liblist lib1;  
instance top.U2 liblist lib2;  
instance top.U3 liblist lib3;  
endconfig
```

- Design Compiler Tcl script

```
define_design_lib lib1 -path ./lib1  
define_design_lib lib2 -path ./lib2  
define_design_lib lib3 -path ./lib3  
define_design_lib rtlLib -path ./rtlLib  
analyze -f verilog -library lib1 sub1.v  
analyze -f verilog -library lib2 sub2.v  
analyze -f verilog -library lib3 sub3.v  
analyze -f verilog -library rtlLib top.v  
analyze -f verilog config.v  
elaborate cfg1
```

- Netlist

The output netlist shows that each instance of the sub1 module uses a different library specified in the configuration file. The U1 instance uses the sub1 module from the lib1 library to implement the AND function. The U2 instance uses the sub1 module from the lib2 library to implement the OR function. The U3 instance uses the sub1 module from the lib3 library to implement the XOR function.

```

module sub1 ( i1, i2, o1 );
    input i1, i2;
    output o1;
    GTECH_AND2 C7 ( .A(i1), .B(i2), .Z(o1) );
endmodule

module sub1_1 ( i1, i2, o1 );
    input i1, i2;
    output o1;
    GTECH_OR2 C7 ( .A(i1), .B(i2), .Z(o1) );
endmodule

module sub1_2 ( i1, i2, o1 );
    input i1, i2;
    output o1;
    GTECH_XOR2 C7 ( .A(i1), .B(i2), .Z(o1) );
endconfig

module top ( i1, i2, i3, i4, o1, o2, o3 );
    input i1, i2, i3, i4;
    output o1, o2, o3;
    sub1 U1 ( .i1(i1), .i2(i2), .o1(o1) );
    sub1_1 U2 ( .i1(o1), .i2(i3), .o1(o2) );
    sub1_2 U3 ( .i1(o2), .i2(i4), .o1(o3) );
endmodule

```

---

## Multiple Top-Level Designs

The following example shows that you can specify multiple top-level designs in configurations. The configuration file instantiates the top1 and top2 top-level designs.

- Top-level top1.v file

```

module top1(
    input i1, i2, i3, i4,
    output o1, o2, o3
);
    sub1 U1 (i1, i2, o1);
endmodule

```

- Top-level top2.v file

```

module top2(
    input i1, i2, i3, i4,
    output o1, o2, o3
);
    sub1 U2 (o1, i3, o2);
endmodule

```

- Configuration file

```

config cfg1;
design lib1.top1 lib2.top2;
instance top1.U1 liblist lib3;
instance top2.U2 liblist lib4;
endconfig

```

- Design Compiler Tcl script

```

define_design_lib lib1 -path ./lib1
define_design_lib lib2 -path ./lib2
define_design_lib lib3 -path ./lib3
define_design_lib lib4 -path ./lib4
define_design_lib lib5 -path ./lib5
analyze -f verilog -library lib4 sub2.v
analyze -f verilog -library lib5 sub3.v
analyze -f verilog -library lib3 sub1.v
analyze -f verilog -library lib1 top1.v
analyze -f verilog -library lib2 top2.v
analyze -f verilog config.v
elaborate cfg1

```

- Netlist of the top1.v file

The top1netlist shows that the sub1\_1 module from the lib3 library is used to implement the AND function, as specified in the configuration file.

```

module sub1_1 ( i1, i2, o1 );
    input i1, i2;
    output o1;
    GTECH_AND2 C7 ( .A(i1), .B(i2), .Z(o1) );
endmodule

module top1 ( i1, i2, i3, i4, o1, o2, o3 );
    input i1, i2, i3, i4;
    output o1, o2, o3;
    sub1_1 U1 ( .i1(i1), .i2(i2), .o1(o1) );
endmodule

```

- Netlist of the top2.v file

The top2 netlist shows that the sub1 module from lib4 library is used to implement the OR function, as specified in the configuration file.

```
module sub1 ( i1, i2, o1 );
    input i1, i2;
    output o1;
    GTECH_OR2 C7 ( .A(i1), .B(i2), .Z(o1) );
endmodule

module top2 ( i1, i2, i3, i4, o1, o2, o3 );
    input i1, i2, i3, i4;
    output o1, o2, o3;
    sub1 U2 ( .i1(o1), .i2(i3), .o1(o2) );
endmodule
```

# Glossary

---

**anonymous type**

A predefined or underlying type with no name, such as universal integers.

**ASIC**

Application-specific integrated circuit.

**behavioral view**

The set of Verilog statements that describe the behavior of a design by using sequential statements. These statements are similar in expressive capability to those found in many other programming languages. See also the *data flow view*, *sequential statement*, and *structural view* definitions.

**bit-width**

The width of a variable, signal, or expression in bits. For example, the bit-width of the constant 5 is 3 bits.

**character literal**

Any value of type CHARACTER, in single quotation marks.

**computable**

Any expression whose (constant) value HDL Compiler can determine during translation.

**constraints**

The designer's specification of design performance goals. Design Compiler uses constraints to direct the optimization of a design to meet area and timing goals.

**convert**

To change one type to another. Only integer types and subtypes are convertible, along with same-size arrays of convertible element types.

**data flow view**

The set of Verilog statements that describe the behavior of a design by using concurrent statements. These descriptions are usually at the level of Boolean equations combined with other operators and function calls. See also the *behavioral view* and *structural view*.

**Design Compiler**

The Synopsys tool that synthesizes and optimizes ASIC designs from multiple input sources and formats.

**design constraints**

See *constraints*.

**flip-flop**

An edge-sensitive memory device.

**HDL**

Hardware Description Language.

**HDL Compiler**

The Synopsys Verilog synthesis product.

**identifier**

A sequence of letters, underscores, and numbers. An identifier cannot be a Verilog reserved word, such as *type* or *loop*. An identifier must begin with a letter or an underscore.

**latch**

A level-sensitive memory device.

**netlist**

A network of connected components that together define a design.

**optimization**

The modification of a design in an attempt to improve some performance aspect. Design Compiler optimizes designs and tries to meet specified design constraints for area and speed.

**port**

A signal declared in the interface list of an entity.

**reduction operator**

An operator that takes an array of bits and produces a single-bit result, namely the result of the operator applied to each successive pair of array elements.

**register**

A memory device containing one or more flip-flops or latches used to hold a value.

**resource sharing**

The assignment of a similar Verilog operation (for example, +) to a common netlist cell. Netlist cells are the resources—they are equivalent to built hardware.

**RTL**

Register transfer level, a set of structural and data flow statements.

**sequential statement**

A set of Verilog statements that execute in sequence.

**signal**

An electrical quantity that can be used to transmit information. A signal is declared with a type and receives its value from one or more drivers. Signals are created in Verilog through either wire or reg declarations.

**signed value**

A value that can be positive, zero, or negative.

**structural view**

The set of Verilog statements used to instantiate primitive and hierarchical components in a design. A Verilog design at the structural level is also called a netlist. See also *behavioral view* and *data flow view*.

**subtype**

A type declared as a constrained version of another type.

**synthesis**

The creation of optimized circuits from a high-level description. When Verilog is used, synthesis is a two-step process: translation from Verilog to gates by HDL Compiler and optimization of those gates for a specific ASIC library with Design Compiler.

**translation**

The mapping of high-level language constructs onto a lower-level form. HDL Compiler translates RTL Verilog descriptions to gates.

**type**

In Verilog, the mechanism by which objects are restricted in the values they are assigned and the operations that can be applied to them.

**unsigned**

A value that can be only positive or zero.





## Symbols

- : (variable part-select operator) 35
- 'define 17
- 'else 19
- 'elsif 19
- 'endif 19
- 'ifdef VERILOG\_1995 29
- 'ifdef VERILOG\_2000 29
- 'ifdef, 'else, 'endif, 'ifndef, and 'elsif 19
- 'ifndef 19
- 'include 18
- 'undefineall 20
- " - " operator 4
- " + " operator 4
- " < " operator 4
- " > " operator 4
- \*\* (power operator) 40
- +: (variable part-select operator) 35
- <<< (arithmetic shift operator) 40
- >>> (arithmetic shift operator) 40
- \$display 23

## A

- adders 2
  - carry bit overflow 5
  - mapped to synthetic library components 4
- always block
  - edge expressions 23
- always construct 25, 31, 1, 4, 14, 15
- arithmetic shift operators 40
- Arrays of nets 29
- assignments
  - always construct 25, 31, 1, 4, 14, 15
  - blocking 15, 16
  - continuous 28
  - initial 4, 5
  - nonblocking 25, 15, 16
- asynchronous processes 23

## B

- binary numbers 2
- bit accesses 27
- bit and memory accesses 27

- bit-blasting 23
- bit-truncation
  - explicit 29
- bit-width
  - prefix for numbers 2
  - specifying in numbers 2
- blocking and nonblocking 15
- blocking assignments 15, 16
- Busing 23
- bus\_multiple\_separator\_style 13
- bus\_naming\_style variable 27
- bus\_range\_separator\_style 13
- C
- case statements
  - casex, casez 12
  - hdlin\_infer\_mux 17
  - hdlin\_mux\_size\_limit 17
  - in while loops 26
  - missing assignment in a case statement branch 26
  - SELECT\_OP Inference 12
  - used in multiplexing logic 12
- casex 12
- casez 12
- casting operators 35
- coding for QoR 2
- coding guidelines 16
- coding guidelines for DC Ultra datapath optimization
  - bit-truncation
    - implicit 29
- combinational logic 1
- Comma-separated sensitivity lists 29
- compiler directives 17
- conditional assignments
  - if-else 5
- conditional inclusion of code
  - 'ifdef, 'else, 'endif, 'ifndef, and 'elsif Directives 19
- continuous assignments 28
- controlling signs 35
- conventions for documentation 4
- customer support 5

## D

D flip-flop, see flip-flop

Data-Path Duplication 2

dc\_script\_end directive 4, 5

decimal numbers 2

declaration requirements

    tri data type 17

deprecated features 20

Design Compiler 18, 27, 5, 3, 15, 16

directives

    ‘define 17

    ‘else 19

    ‘endif 19

    ‘include 18

    ‘undef 23

    ‘undefineall 20

    dc\_script\_begin 4

    dc\_script\_end 4

    full\_case 7

    infer\_multibit 10

    infer\_mux 16, 14

    infer\_onehot\_mux 14, 15

    multibit inference 9

    one\_cold 15

    one\_hot 15

    parallel\_case 16

    parallel\_case used with full\_case 7

    rp\_align 8, 22

    rp\_array\_dir 7, 21

    rp\_endgroup 4, 20

    rp\_endignore 9, 23

    rp\_fill 6, 21

    rp\_group 4, 20

    rp\_ignore 9, 23

    rp\_orient 8, 22

    rp\_place 5, 20

    see also `hdlin_` for variables

    simulation 29

disable 14

don't care 26

don't cares

- in case statements 26
- E
- ELAB-302 13
- ELAB-366 7
- elaboration errors, reporting 9
- elaboration reports 8
- embedding constraints and attributes
  - dc\_script\_begin 4
  - dc\_script\_end 4
- enum directive 5
- enumerated type inference report 7
- enumerated types 7
- errors 24, 16, 2, 7, 5, 23, 24
  - ELAB-302 13
  - ELAB-366 7
  - ELAB-900 24
- Explicit bit-truncation 29
- expression tree
  - optimized for delay 6
- F
- file formats, automatic detection of 7
- finite state machine 3
  - automatic detection 1
  - fsm\_auto\_inferring 3
  - inference report 6
- finite state machines
  - automatic detection 1
- flip 4
- flip-flop
  - clocked\_on\_also attribute 16
  - D-flip-flop
    - D flip-flop with a synchronous load and an asynchronous load 22
    - D flip-flop with an asynchronous reset 19
    - D flip-flop with an asynchronous set 18
    - D flip-flop with synchronous reset 21
    - D flip-flop with synchronous set 20
    - rising-edge-triggered D flip-flop 18
  - master-slave latches 16
  - SEQGENs 2
- flows
  - interacting with low-power flows 18

- interacting with other flows 18
  - interacting with Synthesis flows 18
  - interacting with verification flows 21
- for loop 32
- FSM inference variables 3
- fsm\_auto\_inferring 3
- full\_case 7
- functional description
  - function declarations in 25
- functions 27, 23, 24, 2, 5, 4, 18, 30, 32, 2
- G
- gate-level constructs 25
- H
- hdlin\_elab\_errors\_deep 9
- hdlin\_infer\_mux 17
- hdlin\_keep\_signal\_name variable 18
- hdlin\_mux\_oversize\_ratio 17
- hdlin\_mux\_size\_limit 17
- hdlin\_mux\_size\_min 17
- hdlin\_mux\_size\_only variable 18
- hdlin\_preserve\_sequential variable 8
- hdlin\_prohibit\_nontri\_multiple\_drivers 7
- hdlin\_reporting\_level directive 3
- hdlin\_reporting\_level variable 8, 4, 2
- hdlin\_vrlg\_std 3
- hexadecimal numbers 2
- hierarchical
  - boundaries 26
  - constructs 25
- I
- If 4
- if statements
  - hdlin\_infer\_mux 17
  - in case statements 26
  - infer MUX\_OP cells 16
- ifdef VERILOG\_1995 29
- ifdef VERILOG\_2001 29
- if-else 5
- ignored functions 30
- implicit bit-truncation 29
- include 18

- incompletely specified case statement 26
- inference report
  - description 2
- inference reports 4
  - enumerated types 7
  - finite state machine 6
  - multibit components 12
- infer\_multibit 10
- infer\_mux 16
- infer\_mux directive 14
- infer\_onehot\_mux directive 14, 15
- inferring flip-flops 16
- initial assignment 4, 5
- inout
  - connecting to gate 16
  - connecting to module 16
- instantiations 25, 27, 6, 16
- L
- latches
  - avoiding unintended latches 31
  - clocked\_on\_also 16
  - D latch 14
  - D latch with an active-low asynchronous set and reset 15
  - generic sequential cells (SEQGENs) 2
  - master-slave latches 16
  - resulting from conditionally assigned variables 13
- late-arriving signals
  - datapath duplication solution 2
  - moving late-arriving signal close to output solution 2
- lexical conventions 2
- license requirements 32
- loops
  - case statements
    - in while loops 26
- M
- macro substitution 17
- macromodule 16
- macros 20
  - global reset
    - 'undefineall 20
  - local reset

- 'undefineall 23
  - macro definition on the command line 18
  - specifying macros
    - 'define 17
  - specifying macros that take arguments 17
- SYNTHESIS 20
- VERILOG\_1995 20
- VERILOG\_2001 20
- memory accesses 27
- mismatch 2
  - full\_case usage 7
  - parallel\_case usage 16
  - simulator/synthesis 2
  - three-states 4
  - z value 2
  - z value comparison 2
- module
  - connecting to inout 16
- multibit components
  - benefits 1
  - bus\_multiple\_separator\_style 13
  - bus\_range\_separator\_style 13
  - described 1
  - multibit inference report 12
  - report\_multibit command 12
- multibit inference directives 9
- multidimensional arrays 30
- multiplexer
  - cell size 21
  - MUX\_OP 20
- multiplexers 27
- multiplexing logic
  - case statements in while loops 26
  - case statements that contain don't care values 26
  - case statements that have a missing case statement branch 26
  - Design Compiler implementation 14
  - for bit or memory accesses 27
  - hdlin\_infer\_mux variable 16
  - hdlin\_mux\_oversize\_ratio 17
  - hdlin\_mux\_size\_limit 17
  - hdlin\_mux\_size\_min 17

- if-else-begin-if constructs 5
- implement conditional operations implied by if and case statements 12
- incompletely specified case statement 26
- infer MUX\_OP cells 15
- infer\_mux 16
- MUX\_OP cells 12
- MUX\_OP Inference Limitations 26
- preferentially map multiplexing logic to multiplexers 12
- SELECT\_OP cells 12
- sequential if statements 5
- warning message 26
- with if and case statements 12
- MUX\_OP cells, setting the size\_only attribute 18
- MUX\_OP inference 15
- N
- nonblocking assignments 25, 15, 16
- number
  - binary 2
  - decimal 2
  - formats 2
  - hexadecimal 2
  - octal 2
  - specifying bit-width 2
- O
- octal numbers 2
- one 15
- one\_cold directive 15
- one\_hot directive 15
- one-hot multiplexer 14
- operators
  - casting 35
  - power 40
  - shift 40
  - variable part-select 35
- optimization 1
  - fsm\_auto\_inferring 3
- P
- parallel\_case 7, 16
- parameterized design 21
- parameters 19, 21, 24, 2, 5, 19, 4, 28
- Part-Select Addressing 35



- ports
  - inout port requirements 16
- Power 40
- power operator (\*\*) 40
- processes
  - asynchronous 23
  - synchronous 23
- R
- radices 2
- read\_file -format command 7
- reading designs
  - analyze -f verilog { files } elaborate 19
  - automatic structure detector 18
  - netlists 18
  - parameterized designs 18
  - read -f verilog -netlist { files } (dcsh) 19
  - read\_file -f verilog -netlist { files } (tcl) 19
  - read\_file -f verilog -rtl { files } 19
  - read\_verilog 19
  - read\_verilog -netlist { files } (tcl) 19
  - read\_verilog -rtl { files } (tcl) 19
  - RTL 18
- register inference examples 13
- relative placement 2
  - compiler directives 17
  - creating groups 4, 20
  - examples 10
  - figures 11
  - ignoring 9, 23
  - placing cells automatically 6, 21
  - specifying cell alignment 8, 22
  - specifying cell orientation 8, 22
  - specifying placement 7, 21
  - specifying subgroups, keepouts, and instances 5, 20
- remove\_design 19
- removing designs 19
- report\_multibit 12
- report\_multibit command 12
- resets
  - global reset
    - 'undefineall 20

- local reset
  - 'undef 23
- S
- SELECT\_OP 12
- sensitivity list 23
- Sequential if statements 5
- shift operators 40
- Sign Conversion Warnings 7
- sign rules 34
- signal names, keeping 18
- signed arithmetic extensions 32
- Signed Constants 32
- Signed I/O Ports 32
- signed keyword 33
- Signed Registers 32
- Signed Types 33
- signs
  - casting operator 35
  - controlling signs 35
  - sign conversion warnings 35
- simulation
  - directives 29
- simulator/synthesis mismatch
  - full\_case usage 7
  - parallel\_case usage 16
- slow reads 18
- SolvNet
  - accessing 5
  - documentation 2
- standard macros
  - macro definition on the command line 18
  - see also macros
  - SYNTHESIS 20
  - VERILOG\_1995 20
  - VERILOG\_2001 20
- structural description
  - elements of 25
- synchronous
  - processes 23
- SYNTHESIS macro 28
- synthetic comments. *See* directives

system functions, Verilog 30

T

tasks 23, 25, 27, 23, 2, 4, 14

template

- directive 19

- See also parameterized designs

three-state buffer

- hdlin\_prohibit\_nontri\_multiple\_drivers 7

- tri data type 17

tri Data Type declaration requirement 17

two-phase design 18

U

unloaded registers, keeping 8

V

variable

- conditionally assigned 13

- reading 13

variable part-select operators 35

variables, (see hdlin\_)

VER 7

VER-318 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12

Verilog

- keywords 3

- system function 30

Verilog 2001 features 28

- 'ifndef, 'elsif, 'undef 29

- ANSI-C-style port declaration 28

- arithmetic shift operators 29

- casting operators 28

- comma-separated sensitivity lists 29

- disabling features 20

- hdlin\_vrlg\_std = 1995 20

- hdlin\_vrlg\_std = 2001 20

- implicit event expression list 28

- multidimensional arrays 29

- parameter passing by name 28

- power operator (\*\*) 29

- signed/unsigned nets and registers 28

- signed/unsigned parameters 28

- signed/unsigned sized and based constants 28

- sized parameters 29

- SYNTHESIS macro 28
- Verilog language version, controlling 3
- W
- warnings
  - encodings 6
  - hdlin\_unsigned\_integers 34
  - sign conversion 8
  - VER-318 8
- while loop 24, 25, 26, 27